Dell Networking W-ClearPass Deployment Guide

Copyright

© Copyright 2016 Hewlett Packard Enterprise Development LP. Dell™, the DELL™ logo, and PowerConnect™ are trademarks of Dell Inc.

All rights reserved. Specifications in this manual are subject to change without notice.

Originated in the USA. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Open Source Code

This product includes code licensed under the GNU General Public License, the GNU Lesser General Public License, and/or certain other open source licenses. You may request a copy of this source code free of charge at <u>HPE-Aruba-gplquery@hpe.com</u>. Please specify the product and version for which you are requesting source code.

Contents

Copyright	2
Contents	
About W-ClearPass	11
About This Guide	11
Intended Audience	11
About the W-ClearPass Access Management System	12
W-ClearPass Access Management System Overview	12
Key Features	13
Advanced Policy Management	13
W-ClearPass Policy Manager Hardware and Virtual Appliances	14
W-ClearPass Specifications	14
Setting Up the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliances	15
About the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliances	16
W-ClearPass Policy Manager 500 Hardware Appliance	16
W-ClearPass Policy Manager 5K Hardware Appliance	18
W-ClearPass Policy Manager 25K Hardware Appliance	19
Before Starting the W-ClearPass Installation	21
Configuring the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance	22
Activating W-ClearPass	23
Logging in to the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance	24
Signing Up for Live Software Updates	25
Changing the Administration Password	25
Powering Off the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance	26
Resetting the System Passwords to the Factory Defaults	27
Using the VMware vSphere Web Client to Install W-ClearPass on a Virtual Machine	28
Introduction	
Before Starting the W-ClearPass Installation	29

	vSphere Web Client W-ClearPass Installation Overview	30
	W-ClearPass VMware Virtual Appliance Installation Setup	30
	Adding a Virtual Hard Disk	33
	Launching the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance	35
	Completing the Virtual Appliance Setup	.36
	Applying and Activating the W-ClearPass License	37
	Logging in to the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance	39
	Signing Up for Live Software Updates	.40
	Changing the Administration Password	. 40
	Powering Off the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance	41
U	sing Microsoft Hyper-V to Install W-ClearPass on a Virtual Appliance	41
	Introduction	42
	Before Starting the W-ClearPass Installation	43
	W-ClearPass Hyper-V Virtual Appliance Installation Summary	44
	Importing the Virtual Machine	44
	Adding a Hard Disk to a Virtual Machine	48
	Launching the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance	51
	Completing the Virtual Appliance Configuration	53
	Applying and Activating the W-ClearPass License	54
	Logging in to the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance	55
	Signing Up for Live Software Updates	. 56
	Changing the Administration Password	. 56
	Powering Off the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance	57
A	ccessing the W-ClearPass Administrative Interface	57
	Supported Browsers	. 58
	Accessing the Administrative Interface	. 58
	Changing the Administration Password	. 59
	Accessing W-ClearPass Online Help	60
N	laintaining W-ClearPass Policy Manager Services	.60

Starting or Stopping W-ClearPass Services	60
Summary of the Server Configuration Page	61
Subset of CLI for W-ClearPass Maintenance Tasks	62
Preparing the Mobility Controller for W-ClearPass Policy Manager Integra	tion 65
Adding a Mobility Controller to W-ClearPass Policy Manager	65
Defining a New Mobility Controller	65
Importing a List of Network Devices	67
Generating an Example of Import File XML Format	67
Adding a W-ClearPass/RADIUS Server to the Mobility Controller	68
Adding the W-ClearPass/RADIUS Server to a Server Group	73
Configuring an AAA Profile for 802.1X Authentication	75
Configuring a Virtual AP Profile	79
About Virtual AP Profiles	79
Configuring the Virtual AP Profile	80
Configuring W-ClearPass as an RFC 3576 (CoA) Server	83
About the CoA Server	84
Configuring the W-ClearPass Server as a CoA Server	84
Using the CLI	85
Adding an SSID to the Mobility Controller for 802.1X Authentication	85
SSID Profile Overview	85
Adding an SSID to the Mobility Controller	86
Preparing for Active Directory Authentication	93
Joining a W-ClearPass Server to an Active Directory Domain	93
Introduction	93
Confirming the Date and Time Are in Sync	94
Joining an Active Directory Domain	95
About the Authentication Source and the Authorization Process	98
Manually Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers for Authentication	98
Disassociating a W-ClearPass Server From an Active Directory Domain	99

Adding Active Directory as an Authentication Source to W-ClearPass	
About Authorization	101
User Objects	101
About the Bind Operation	
Adding Active Directory as an Authentication Source	
Obtaining and Installing a Signed Certificate From Active Directory	
About Certificates in W-ClearPass Deployments	108
How to Obtain a Signed Certificate from Active Directory	109
Creating a Certificate Signing Request	109
Importing the Root CA Files to the Certificate Trust List	112
Obtaining a Signed Certificate from Active Directory	113
Importing a Server Certificate into W-ClearPass	117
Manually Testing Login Credentials Against Active Directory	118
Preparing for 802.1X Wireless Authentication with Active Directory	
About 802.1X Authentication	119
Introducing 802.1X	119
802.1X Authentication Components	119
What Is AAA?	
Authentication	121
Authorization	121
Accounting	121
Configuring 802.1X Wireless Authentication with Active Directory	
Authenticating Against Active Directory	122
About the 802.1X Wireless Service	
Creating the 802.1X Wireless Service	123
Deleting a W-ClearPass Policy Manager Service	127
Walking Through an 802.1X Authentication Scenario	128
802.1X Wireless Authentication Traffic Flow	128
Walking Through the 802.1X Authentication Process	128

802.1X Wired Authentication Traffic Flow	129
Troubleshooting 802.1X Configuration Issues	
Active Directory Authentication Source Configuration Issues	129
Mobility Controller Configuration Issues	129
Deploying W-ClearPass Clusters	
W-ClearPass Cluster Overview	131
Introduction	131
W-ClearPass Databases	
Publisher/Subscriber Model	132
Network Ports That Must Be Enabled	134
Cluster Scaling Limitations	135
Cluster Design Considerations	
Cluster Deployment Sizing Guidance	135
Publisher Node Guidelines	136
Subscriber Node Guidelines	137
Providing Sufficient Bandwidth Between Publisher and Subscribers	
RTT Considerations When Building Geographically Distributed Clusters	
Implementing W-ClearPass Zones for Geographical Regions	139
About Large Scale Deployments	141
What Is a Large Scale Deployment?	141
Design Guidelines	141
Examples of Customer Cluster Deployments	
Deploying the Standby Publisher	144
Setting Up the Standby Publisher	144
About the Fail-Over Process	
Mitigation Strategies	145
Virtual IP Address Considerations	146
Functions Lost When the Publisher Is Down	146
Adding a Subscriber Node to the Publisher	146

	Introduction	146
	Using the WebUI to Add a Subscriber Node	147
	Using the CLI to Create a Subscriber Node	149
I	Rejoining a Down Node to the Cluster	150
	Introduction	150
	Removing a Subscriber Node from the Cluster	150
	Rejoining a Node Back Into the Cluster	151
I	Deploying W-ClearPass Insight in a Cluster	152
	Introduction	152
	W-ClearPass Insight Placement Considerations	153
	When a W-ClearPass Insight-Enabled Node Is Down	153
	Enabling W-ClearPass Insight	153
(Configuring Cluster File-Backup Servers	154
	Adding Cluster File-Backup Servers	154
	Backing Up Configuration and Access Tracker Log Information	156
I	Jsing High Capacity Guest Mode	157
	Introduction	158
	Licensing Considerations	158
	EAP-PSK Protocol	159
	Enabling High Capacity Guest Mode	159
	Cleanup Intervals Settings for High Capacity Guest Mode	160
	Service Templates Supported	161
	Service Types Supported	161
	Authentication Methods Supported	161
(Cluster CLI Commands	162
	cluster drop-subscriber	162
	cluster list	162
	cluster make-publisher	163
	cluster make-subscriber	163

cluster reset-database	164
cluster set-cluster-passwd	164
cluster sync-cluster-passwd	
Mobility Access Switch Configuration for 802.1X Authentication	
Mobility Access Switch Configuration for 802.1X Wired Authentication	
About Defining Wired 802.1X Authentication	
Configuring Authentication with a RADIUS Server	166
Authentication Terminated on the Mobility Access Switch	
Configuring Access Control Lists	168
CLI-Based Configuration for Mobility Access Switch 802.1X Authentication	
Termination Options	
Configuring a Server Rule Using the CLI	171
Setting Variables for LDAP Servers	
Configuring Certificates with Authentication Termination	171
Configuring 802.1X Authentication with Machine Authentication	172
About Machine Authentication	
Enabling the Enforce Machine Authentication Option	
Role Assignment with Machine Authentication Enabled	173
VLAN Assignments	174
Authentication with an 802.1x RADIUS Server	
Examples of Common 802.1X Configuration Tasks Via the CLI	176
Preparing W-ClearPass for LDAP and SQLAuthentication Sources	
LDAP Authentication Source Configuration	179
Configuring Generic LDAP Authentication Sources	179
SQL Authentication Source Configuration	
Configuring a Generic SQL Authentication Source	184
Defining a Filter Query	
802.1X EAP-PEAP Reference	
A Tour of the EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPv2 Ladder	191

About EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2	
EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2 Handshake Exchange Summary	191
Using the W-ClearPass Configuration API	
W-ClearPass Configuration API Overview	
Introduction	199
Admin Accounts for API Access	
XML Data Structure	
Filter Elements	201
Advanced Match Operations	201
Setting Up Bulk Access for Endpoints and Guest Accounts	
W-ClearPass Configuration API Methods	
Introduction	204
Authentication Credentials	
Entity Names Supported	205
NameList	206
Reorder	
Status Change	208
W-ClearPass Configuration API Examples	
Introduction	209
Using the Contains Match Operator	209
Retrieving a Guest User Value	209
Retrieving a Local User Value	210
Adding a Guest User Value	211
Updating a Guest User Value	211
Removing a Guest User	212
API Error Handling	214
When There Is an Error During a Request	214
InvalidFetchCriteria Example	214
About the API Explorer	215

Chapter 1 About W-ClearPass

This chapter provides an overview of the W-ClearPass Policy Manager Access Management System. This chapter includes the following information:

- About This Guide
- About the W-ClearPass Access Management System
- Setting Up the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliances
- Using the VMware vSphere Web Client to Install W-ClearPass on a Virtual Machine
- Using Microsoft Hyper-V to Install W-ClearPass on a Virtual Appliance
- Maintaining W-ClearPass Policy Manager Services

About This Guide

Welcome to the W-ClearPass 6.6 Deployment Guide.

The *W-ClearPass 6.6 Deployment Guide* is intended to assist field System Engineers and network administrators, as well as customers and partners, in deploying W-ClearPass Policy Manager.

This guide is organized in a way that presents the recommended sequence in which W-ClearPass deployment should take place, and makes the major deployment tasks easy to understand and implement.

The W-ClearPass 6.6 Deployment Guide includes the following information:

- Chapter 1: Install and configure W-ClearPass hardware and virtual appliances.
- <u>Chapter 2:</u> Prepare the Mobility Controller for integration with W-ClearPass Policy Manager.
- Chapter 3: Integrate W-ClearPass Policy Manager with Microsoft Active Directory.
- <u>Chapter 4:</u> Set up 802.1X wireless authentication with Active Directory.
- Chapter 5: Design and deploy W-ClearPass clusters.
- <u>Chapter 6:</u> Configure the Mobility Access Switch for 802.1X wired authentication.
- Chapter 7: Prepare W-ClearPass for LDAP and SQL authentication.
- <u>Appendix A:</u> Describes how a typical 802.1X authentication session flows when using W-ClearPass as the authentication server with Microsoft Active Directory as the back-end user identity repository.
- <u>Appendix B:</u> Use the W-ClearPass Configuration API to configure or modify the entities in W-ClearPass without logging into the Admin user interface. Information about how to access the entire set of APIs available through W-ClearPass is also provided.

Intended Audience

The intended audience for the *W*-ClearPass Deployment Guide includes customers, partners, and field System Engineers.

Please note that this document is not a training guide, and it is assumed that the reader has at minimum foundational training in W-ClearPass Essentials and, if possible, Dell Certified W-ClearPass Professional (ACCP) certification.

The user of this guide should have a working knowledge of the following:

- AAA technologies (RADIUS, TACACS, 802.1X, MAC address authentication, and Web authentication)
- Layer-2 and Layer-3 networking
- User Identity stores, such as Active Directory



Providing information about network device configurations and capabilities is outside the scope of this guide. For information on these topics, refer to the documentation provided by the vendor of your network equipment.

About the W-ClearPass Access Management System

This section contains the following information:

- W-ClearPass Access Management System Overview
- Key Features
- Advanced Policy Management
- W-ClearPass Policy Manager Hardware and Virtual Appliances
- W-ClearPass Specifications

W-ClearPass Access Management System Overview

The Dell W-ClearPass Access Management System provides a window into your network and covers all your access security requirements from a single platform. You get complete views of mobile devices and users and have total control over what they can access.

With W-ClearPass, IT can centrally manage network policies, automatically configure devices and distribute security certificates, admit guest users, assess device health, and even share information with third-party solutions—through a single pane of glass, on any network and without changing the current infrastructure.

Role-Based and Device-Based Access

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager[™] platform provides role-based and device-based network access control for employees, contractors, and guests across any wired, wireless, and VPN infrastructure.

W-ClearPass works with any multivendor network and can be extended to business and IT systems that are already in place.

Self-Service Capabilities

W-ClearPass delivers a wide range of unique self-service capabilities. Users can securely onboard their own devices for enterprise use or register AirPlay, AirPrint, Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA), and Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) devices that are enabled for sharing, sponsor guest Wi-Fi access, and even set up sharing for Apple TV and Google Chromecast.

Leveraging Contextual Data

The power of W-ClearPass comes from integrating ultra-scalable AAA (authentication, authorization, and accounting) with policy management, guest network access, device onboarding, and device health checks with a complete understanding of context.

From this single W-ClearPass policy and AAA platform, contextual data is leveraged across the network to ensure that users and devices are granted the appropriate access privileges.

W-ClearPass leverages a user's role, device, location, application use, and time of day to execute custom security policies, accelerate device deployments, and streamline network operations across wired networks, wireless networks, and VPNs.

Third-Party Security and IT Systems

W-ClearPass can be extended to third-party security and IT systems using REST-based APIs to automate work flows that previously required manual IT intervention. It integrates with mobile device management to leverage device inventory and posture information, which enables better-informed policy decisions.

Key Features

W-ClearPass's key features are as follows:

- Role-based network access enforcement for multivendor Wi-Fi, wired, and VPN networks
- High performance, scalability, High Availability, and load balancing
- A Web-based user interface that simplifies policy configuration and troubleshooting
- Network Access Control (NAC), Network Access Protection (NAP) posture and health checks, and Mobile Device Management (MDM) integration for mobile device posture checks
- Auto Sign-On and single sign-on (SSO) support via Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) v2.0
- Social Network and Cloud Application SSO via OAuth2
 - Facebook, Twitter, LinkedIn, Office365, Google Apps, and so on
- Built-in Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) Certificate Authority for secure self-service onboarding
- Advanced reporting of all user authentications and failures
- Enterprise Reporting, Monitoring, and Alerting
- HTTP/RESTful APIs for integration with third-party systems, Internet security, and MDM
- Device profiling and self-service onboarding
- Guest access with extensive branding and customization and sponsor-based approvals
- IPv6 administration support

Advanced Policy Management

W-ClearPass advanced policy management support includes:

Employee access

W-ClearPass Policy Manager offers user and device authentication based on 802.1X, non-802.1X, and Web Portal access methods. To strengthen security in any environment, you can concurrently use multiple authentication protocols, such as PEAP, EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, and EAP-PEAP-Public.

For fine-grained control, you can use attributes from multiple identity stores, such as Microsoft Active Directory, LDAP-compliant directory, ODBC-compliant SQL database, token servers, and internal databases across domains within a single policy.

Additionally, you can add posture assessments and remediation to existing policies at any time.

Built-in device profiling

W-ClearPass provides a built-in profiling service that discovers and classifies all endpoints, regardless of device type. You can obtain a variety of contextual data(such as MAC OUIs, DHCP fingerprinting, and other identity-centric device data) and use this data within policies.

Stored profiling data identifies device profile changes and dynamically modifies authorization privileges. For example, if a printer appears as a Windows laptop, W-ClearPass Policy Manager can automatically deny access.

Access for unmanaged endpoints

Unmanaged non-802.1X devices (such as printers, IP phones, and IP cameras) can be identified as *known* or *unknown* upon connecting to the network. The identity of these devices is based on the presence of their MAC address in an external or internal database.

Secure configuration of personal devices

W-ClearPass Onboard fully automates the provisioning of any Windows, Mac OS X, iOS, Android, Chromebook, and Ubuntu devices via a built-in captive portal. Valid users are redirected to a templatebased interface to configure required SSIDs and 802.1X settings, and download unique device credentials.

Additional capabilities include the ability for IT to revoke and delete credentials for lost or stolen devices, and the ability to configure mobile email settings for Exchange ActiveSync and VPN clients on some device types.

Customizable visitor management

W-ClearPass Guest simplifies work flow processes so that receptionists, employees, and other non-IT staff can create temporary guest accounts for secure Wi-Fi and wired network access. Self-registration allows guests to create their credentials.

Device health checks

W-ClearPass OnGuard, as well as separate OnGuard persistent or dissolvable agents, performs advanced endpoint posture assessments. Traditional NAC health-check capabilities ensure compliance and network safeguards before devices connect.

You can use information about endpoint integrity (such as status of anti-virus, anti-spyware, firewall, and peer-to-peer applications) to enhance authorization policies. Automatic remediation services are also available for non-compliant devices.

W-ClearPass Policy Manager Hardware and Virtual Appliances

W-ClearPass Policy Manager is available as hardware or a virtual appliance that supports 500, 5000, and 25,000 authenticating devices.

• For hardware virtual appliance installation and deployment procedures, see <u>Setting Up the W-ClearPass</u> <u>Hardware Appliances on page 15</u>

Virtual appliances are supported on two platforms:

VMware ESX and ESXi

For installation and deployment procedures, see <u>Using the VMware vSphere Web Client to Install W-</u> <u>ClearPass on a Virtual Machine on page 28</u>.

Microsoft Hyper-V

For installation and deployment procedures, see <u>Using Microsoft Hyper-V to Install W-ClearPass on a</u> <u>Virtual Appliance on page 41</u>.

To increase scalability and redundancy, you can deploy virtual appliances, as well as the hardware appliances, within a cluster.

W-ClearPass Specifications

W-ClearPass Policy Manager

- Comprehensive identity-based policy engine
- Posture agents for Windows, Mac OS X, and Linux operating systems
- Built-in AAA services: RADIUS, TACACS+, and Kerberos
- Web, 802.1X, and non-802.1X authentication and authorization

- Reporting, analytics, and troubleshooting tools
- External captive portal redirect to multivendor equipment
- Interactive policy simulation and monitor mode utilities
- Deployment templates for any network type, identity store, and endpoint

Framework and Protocol Support

- RADIUS, RADIUS CoA, TACACS+, Web authentication, and SAML v2.0
- EAP-FAST (EAP-MSCHAPv2, EAP-GTC, EAP-TLS)
- PEAP (EAP-MSCHAPv2, EAP-GTC, EAP-TLS, EAP-PEAP-Public)
- TTLS (EAP-MSCHAPv2, EAP-GTC, EAP- TLS, EAP-MD5, PAP, CHAP)
- EAP-TLS
- PAP, CHAP, MSCHAPv1, MSCHAPv2, and EAP-MD5
- Wireless and wired 802.1X and VPN
- Microsoft NAP and NAC
- Windows machine authentication
- MAC authentication (non-802.1X devices)
- Audit based on port and vulnerability scans

Supported Identity Stores

- Microsoft Active Directory
- Kerberos
- Any LDAP-compliant directory
- Any ODBC-compliant SQL server
- Token servers
- Built-in SQL store
- Built-in static-hosts list

Setting Up the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliances

This section documents the procedures for installing and configuring W-ClearPass on a hardware appliance, as well as how to complete important administrative tasks, such as registering for W-ClearPass software updates and changing the *admin* password.

This section contains the following information:

- About the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliances
- W-ClearPass Policy Manager 500 Hardware Appliance
- W-ClearPass Policy Manager 5K Hardware Appliance
- W-ClearPass Policy Manager 25K Hardware Appliance
- Before Starting the W-ClearPass Installation
- <u>Configuring the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance</u>
- <u>Activating W-ClearPass</u>
- Logging in to the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance
- Signing Up for Live Software Updates
- Powering Off the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance

<u>Resetting the System Passwords to the Factory Defaults</u>

About the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliances

Dell provides three hardware appliance platforms:

- W-ClearPass Policy Manager 500
 See W-ClearPass Policy Manager 500 Hardware Appliance
- W-ClearPass Policy Manager 5K
 See W-ClearPass Policy Manager 5K Hardware Appliance.
- W-ClearPass Policy Manager 25K
 See W-ClearPass Policy Manager 25K Hardware Appliance.

Table 1: Functional Description of the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance Ports

Port	Description
Serial port	The Serial port is used to initially configure the W-ClearPass hardware appliance using a hard-wired terminal.
VGA connector	You can use the VGA Connector to connect the W-ClearPass hardware appliance to a monitor and keyboard.
USB ports	Two USB v2.0 ports are provided.
Management port (Gigabit Ethernet)	The Management port (ethernet 0) provides access for cluster administration and appliance maintenance using the WebUI, CLI, or internal cluster communication. This configuration is mandatory.
Data port (Gigabit Ethernet)	The Data port (ethernet 1) provides a point of contact for RADIUS, TACACS+, Web authentication, and other dataplane requests. This configuration is optional. If this port is not configured, requests are redirected to the Management port.
iDRAC7 Enterprise port	Provides remote access to the system—whether or not there is a functioning operating system running on the appliance. Allows administrators to monitor, manage, update, troubleshoot, and remediate the W-ClearPass 25K appliance from any location. NOTE: Available only on the CP-HW-25K appliance.

W-ClearPass Policy Manager 500 Hardware Appliance

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager 500 hardware appliance (CP-HW-500) is a RADIUS/ TACACS+ server that provides advanced policy control for up to 500 unique endpoints.

CP-HW-500 has a single 500GB SATA disk with no RAID disk protection.

<u>Figure 1</u> shows the ports on the rear panel of the W-ClearPass 500 hardware appliance. The function of each of these ports is described in <u>Table 1</u>.

Figure 1 Ports on the W-ClearPass 500 Hardware Appliance



You can also access the W-ClearPass hardware appliance by connecting a monitor and keyboard to the hardware appliance.

Table 2 describes the specifications for the W-ClearPassPolicy Manager 500 hardware appliance.

Table 2: CP-HW-500 Specifications

CP-HW-500 Component	Specification	
CPU	Pentium G850, Dual Core, 2.9Ghz, 3MB Cache	
Memory	4 GB (2 x2GB)	
Hard drive storage	500GB 7.3K RPM, Serial ATA	
Maximum unique endpoints	High Capacity Guest (HGC) mode enabled: 1,000HGC not enabled: 500	
Maximum number of authentications per day	 High Capacity Guest (HGC) mode enabled: 40,000 HGC not enabled: 20,000 	
Form Factor		
Dimensions (WxHxD)	16.8" x 1.7" x 14"	
Weight (max configuration)	14 lbs	
Power Specifications		
Power consumption (maximum)	260 watts	
Power supply	Single	
AC input voltage	100/240 VAC auto-selecting	
AC input frequency	50/60 Hz auto-selecting	

CP-HW-500 Component	Specification	
Environmental Specifications		
Operating temperature	10° C to 35° C (50° F to 95° F)	
Operating vibration	0.26 G at 5 Hz to 350 Hz for 5 minutes	
Operating shock	1 shock pulse of 31 G for up to 2.6 ms	
Operating altitude	-16 m to 3,048 m (-50 ft to 10,000 ft)	

W-ClearPass Policy Manager 5K Hardware Appliance

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager 5K hardware appliance (CP-HW-5K) is a RADIUS/ TACACS+ server that provides advanced policy control for up to 5,000 unique endpoints.

CP-HW-5K ships with two x 1TB SATA disk drives. These drives are managed by an LSI RAID controller. The drives are configured as a RAID1 pair (RAID1 = block level mirroring). The LSI controller presents to W-ClearPass a single virtual 1TB drive, masking the two underlying physical drives.

<u>Figure 2</u> shows the ports on the rear panel of the W-ClearPass 5K hardware appliance. The function of each of these ports is described in <u>Table 1</u>.

Figure 2 Ports on the W-ClearPass 5K Hardware Appliance



You can also access the W-ClearPass hardware appliance by connecting a monitor and keyboard to the hardware appliance.

Table 3 describes the specifications for the W-ClearPass Policy Manager 5K hardware appliance.

Table 3	: CP-HW-5K	Specifications
---------	------------	----------------

CP-HW- 5K Component	Specification
CPU	Xeon E3-1220 3.10 GHz, 8M Cache, Quad Core/4T
Memory	8GB Memory (4x2GB)
Hard disks	(2) 1TB 7.2K RPM SATA 3Gbps

CP-HW- 5K Component	Specification	
 RAID controller RAID configuration	PERC H2001	
OOB management	Baseboard Management Controller (BMC)	
Maximum unique endpoints	High Capacity Guest (HGC) mode enabled: 10,000HGC not enabled: 5,000	
Maximum number of authentications per day	 High Capacity Guest (HGC) mode enabled: 400,000 HGC not enabled: 200,000 	
Form Factor		
Dimensions (WxHxD	17.53" x 1.7" x 16.8"	
Weight (max configuration)	18 lbs	
Power Specifications		
Power consumption (maximum)	250 watts	
Power supply	Single	
AC input voltage	100/240 VAC auto-selecting	
AC input frequency	50/60 Hz auto-selecting	
Environmental Specifications		
Operating temperature	10° C to 35° C (50° F to 95° F)	
Operating vibration	0.26 G at 5 Hz to 350 Hz for 5 minutes	
Operating shock	1 shock pulse of 31 G for up to 2.6 ms	
Operating altitude	-16 m to 3,048 m (-50 ft to 10,000 ft)	

W-ClearPass Policy Manager 25K Hardware Appliance

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager 25K hardware appliance (CP-HW-25K) is a RADIUS/ TACACS+ server that provides advanced policy control for up to 25,000 unique endpoints.

CP-HW-25K ships with four 300GB 10K Serial-Attach SCSI (SAS) disk drives. These drives are managed by a Dell Power Edge Raid Controller (PERC). The disk drives are configured as a RAID10 group.

The LSI controller presents to W-ClearPass a single virtual 1.675 TB drive, masking the underlying two physical drive groups (two groups of two mirrored drives).

Figure 3 shows the ports on the rear panel of the W-ClearPass 25K hardware appliance. The function of each of these ports is described in Table 1.





Table 4 describes the specifications for the W-ClearPass Policy Manager 25K hardware appliance.

Table 4:	CP-HW-25K Specifications
----------	--------------------------

CP-HW-25K Component	Specification	
CPUs	(2) Xeon X5650 2.66Ghz, 12M Cache, Turbo, HT	
Memory	48GB Memory (12x4GB)	
Hard disks	(4) 300GB 10K RPM Serial-Attach SCSI 6Gbps	
Maximum unique endpoints	High Capacity Guest (HGC) mode enabled: 50,000HGC not enabled: 25,000	
Maximum number of authentications per day	High Capacity Guest (HGC) mode enabled: 2 millionHGC not enabled: 1 million	
 RAID controller RAID configuration	PERC 6/i10	
OOB management	iDRAC7 Enterprise	
Form Factor		
Dimensions (WxHxD	16.8" x 1.7" x 27.8"	
Weight (max configuration)	Up to 39 lbs	
Power Specifications		

CP-HW-25K Component	Specification	
Power consumption (maximum)	750 watts	
Power supply	Dual hot-swappable (optional)	
AC input voltage	100/240 VAC auto-selecting	
AC input frequency	50/60 Hz auto-selecting	
Environmental Specifications		
Operating temperature	10° C to 35° C (50° F to 95° F)	
Operating vibration	0.26 G at 5 Hz to 350 Hz for 5 minutes	
Operating shock	1 shock pulse of 31 G for up to 2.6 ms	
Operating altitude	-16 m to 3,048 m (-50 ft to 10,000 ft)	

Before Starting the W-ClearPass Installation

Before starting the W-ClearPass installation and configuration procedures for the hardware appliance, determine the following information for the W-ClearPass server on your network, note the corresponding values for the parameters listed in Table 5, and keep it for your records:

Table 5: W-ClearPass Server	Configuration	Reference
-----------------------------	---------------	-----------

Required Information	Value for Your Installation
Host name (Policy Manager server)	
Management port IP address	
Management port subnet mask	
Management port gateway	
Data port IP address (optional)	NOTE: Make sure that the Data port IP address is <i>not</i> in the same subnet as the Management port IP address.

Required Information	Value for Your Installation
Data port subnet mask (optional)	
Data port gateway (optional)	
Primary DNS	
Secondary DNS	
NTP server (optional)	

Configuring the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance

The initial setup dialog starts when you connect a terminal, PC, or laptop running a terminal emulation program to the Serial port on the W-ClearPass hardware appliance.

To configure the W-ClearPass Policy Manager hardware appliance:

1. Connect the Serial port.

- a. Connect the Serial port to a terminal using the null modem cable provided.
- b. Power on the hardware appliance.

The hardware appliance is now available for configuration.

2. Configure the Serial port.

Apply the following parameters for the Serial port:

- Bit Rate: 9600
- Data Bits: 8
- Parity: None
- Stop Bits: 1
- Flow Control: None

3. Log in.

Use the following preconfigured credentials to log in to the hardware appliance.

(You will create a unique appliance/cluster administration password in Step 5.)

- login: appadmin
- password: eTIPS123

This initiates the Policy Manager Configuration wizard.

4. Configure the W-ClearPass hardware appliance.

Follow the prompts, replacing the placeholder entries in the following illustration with the information you entered in <u>Table 5</u>:

- Enter hostname:
- Enter Management Port IP Address:
- Enter Management Port Subnet Mask:
- Enter Management Port Gateway:
- Enter Data Port IP Address:
- Enter Data Port Subnet Mask:

- Enter Data Port Gateway:
- Enter Primary DNS:
- Enter Secondary DNS:

5. Specify the cluster password.



Setting the cluster password also changes the password for the CLI user **appadmin**, as well as the Administrative user **admin**. If you want the **admin** password to be unique, see <u>Changing the Administration Password on page 25</u>

- a. Enter any string with a minimum of six characters, then you are prompted to confirm the cluster password.
- b. After this configuration is applied, use this new password for cluster administration and management of the W-ClearPass virtual appliance.

6. Configure the system date and time.

- a. Follow the prompts to configure the system date and time.
- b. To set the date and time by configuring the NTP server, use the primary and secondary NTP server information you entered in Table 5.

7. Apply the configuration.

- a. To apply the configuration, press **Y**.
- To restart the configuration procedure, press **N**.
- To quit the setup process, press **Q**.

Configuration on the hardware appliance console is now complete. The next task is to activate the W-ClearPass product.

Activating W-ClearPass

To activate W-ClearPass Policy Manager and apply the W-ClearPass license:

- 1. After the configuration has been applied at the virtual appliance console, open a web browser and go to the management interface of W-ClearPass Policy Manager: **https://x.x.x.x/tips/**, where **x.x.x.x** is the IP address of the management interface defined for the W-ClearPass server in Table 5.
- 2. Accept any security warnings from your browser regarding the self-signed SSL certificate, which comes installed in W-ClearPass by default.

The **Admin Login** screen appears with a message indicating that you have 90 days to activate the product and a link to activate the product.

Figure 4 Activating W-ClearPass

You have 90 day(s) to activate the product Activate Now

Admin Login		
Username:		
Password:		
Log In		

3. To activate W-ClearPass on this hardware appliance, click **Activate Now**.

When you click **Activate Now**, W-ClearPass Policy Manager attempts to activate the product over the Internet with W-Series Networks license activation servers.

If the W-ClearPass Policy Manager hardware appliance does not have Internet access, you can perform the product activation offline by following the steps for offline activation presented in the **Offline Activation** section shown in Figure 5.



You have 90 day(s) to activate the product		
Online Activation Activate Now		
Offline Activation		
If you are not connected to the Internet, you can download an Activation Request Token and obtain the Activation Key offline.		
Step 1. Download an Activation Request Token Download		
Step 2. Email the Activation Request Token to Aruba Networks Support (support@arubanetworks.com)		
Step 3. Choose File no file selected		
Upload the Activation Key received from Aruba Networks Support Upload		
Update License		
Update License		

After successfully activating W-ClearPass online, you will see a message above the **Admin Login** screen indicating that the product has been successfully activated.

Logging in to the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance

After a successful activation, the **Admin Login** dialog appears.

```
Figure 6 Logging in to the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance
```

Admin Login	
Username:	admin
Password:	•••••
Log In	

- 1. Log in to the W-ClearPass hardware appliance with the following credentials:
 - **Username**: admin
 - **Password**: Enter the cluster password defined in <u>Configuring the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance</u>.
- 2. Click Log In.

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager Landing Page opens.

Figure 7 W-ClearPass Policy Manager Landing Page



Signing Up for Live Software Updates

Upon your initial login to W-ClearPass Policy Manager, you should register for software updates.

1. Navigate to the Administration > Agents and Software Updates > Software Updates page.

A message is displayed indicating that the W-ClearPass hardware appliance is not signed up for live updates and that you must enter your subscription ID.

Figure 8 Entering the Subscription ID for Live Updates

Administration » Agents and Software Updates	Software Updates » Software Updates	* Cluster Upgrade * Cluster Update
	rou are not signed up for live updates; enter your subscription to and save.	
Subscription ID		
Subscription ID:		
		Save Reset

2. If the W-ClearPass Policy Manager has Internet access, enter your subscription ID, then click **Save**.

After successfully applying the subscription ID, you will see a message indicating that the subscription ID was updated successfully and W-ClearPass is processing updates from the W-ClearPass Webservice.

Note that Posture & Profile Data Updates are downloaded and installed automatically, while Firmware & Patch Updates are display only.

Changing the Administration Password

When the cluster password for this W-ClearPass server is set upon initial configuration, the administration password is also set to the same password (see <u>Configuring the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance</u>).

If you wish to assign a unique **admin** password, use this procedure to change it.

To change the administration password:

 In W-ClearPass, navigate to Administration > Users and Privileges > Admin Users. The Admin Users page appears.

Figure 9 Admin Users Page

Filter: User ID	▼ contains ▼	Go Clear Filter Show 10 ▼ records
# 🔲 User ID 🛦	Name	Privilege Level
1. admin	Super Admin	Super Administrator
2. 🔲 apiadmin	API Admin	API Administrator
Showing 1-2 of 2		Export Delete

2. Select the appropriate **admin** user.

The **Edit Admin User** dialog appears.

Figure 10 Changing the Administration Password

Edit Admin User	8
	T
User ID:	admin
Name:	Super Admin
Password:	•••••
Verify Password:	•••••
Privilege Level	Super Administrator
	Save Cancel

3. Change the administration password, verify the new password, then click Save.

Powering Off the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance

This procedure gracefully shuts down the hardware appliance without having to log in.

To power off the W-ClearPass hardware appliance:

- 1. Connect to the CLI from the serial console using the serial port.
- 2. Enter the following commands:
 - login: poweroff
 - password: poweroff

The W-ClearPass hardware appliance shuts down.



You can also power off from the WebUI and the appadmin prompt.

Resetting the System Passwords to the Factory Defaults

To reset the system account passwords in Policy Manager to the factory defaults, you must first generate a password recovery key, then log in as the *apprecovery* user to reset the system account passwords.

Generating the Password Recovery Key

To generate the password recovery key:

- If you are employing a hardware connection, connect to the W-ClearPass Policy Manager hardware appliance using the serial port (using any terminal program). See <u>Configuring the W-ClearPass Hardware</u> <u>Appliance</u> for details.
 - a. If you are employing a virtual appliance, use the VMware console or the Hyper-V hypervisor (see for details).
- 2. Reboot the system using the **restart** command.
- 3. After the system reboots, the following prompt is displayed for ten seconds: Generate support keys? [y/n]:
- 4. At the prompt, enter **y**.

The system prompts you with the following choices:

Please select a support key generation option.

- 1) Generate password recovery key
- 2) Generate a support key
- 3) Generate password recovery and support keys

Enter the option or press any key to quit.

- 5. To generate a password recovery key, select option **1**.
- 6. After the password recovery key is generated, email the key to Dell Technical Support.

A unique password is dynamically generated from the recovery key and emailed to you.

Resetting the System Account Passwords to the Factory Defaults

To reset the administrator password:

- 1. Log in as the **apprecovery** user with the password recovery key provided by Dell Technical Support.
- 2. Enter the following command at the command prompt:

4. You can now log in with the new administrator password emailed to you by Dell Technical Support.

Using the VMware vSphere Web Client to Install W-ClearPass on a Virtual Machine

This section documents the procedures for using the VMware vSphere® Web Client to install W-ClearPass on an ESXi host, as well as completing important administrative tasks, such as registering for W-ClearPass software updates and changing the admin password.

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- Before Starting the W-ClearPass Installation
- vSphere Web Client W-ClearPass Installation Overview
- <u>W-ClearPass VMware Virtual Appliance Installation Setup</u>
- Adding a Virtual Hard Disk
- Launching the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance
- <u>Completing the Virtual Appliance Setup</u>
- Applying and Activating the W-ClearPass License
- Logging in to the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance
- Signing Up for Live Software Updates
- <u>Changing the Administration Password</u>
- Powering Off the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance

Introduction

The VMware vSphere® Web Client enables you to connect to a vCenter Server system to manage an ESX host through a browser.

This section assumes that the VMware vSphere Web Client has been installed. For information about installing and starting the vSphere Web Client, go to <u>VMware Documentation</u>.

Meeting the Recommended ESX/ESXi Server Specifications

Please carefully review all virtual appliance requirements, including functional IOP ratings, and verify that your system meets these requirements. These recommendations supersede earlier requirements that were published for W-ClearPass Policy Manager 6.x installations.

Virtual appliance recommendations are adjusted to align with the requirements for W-ClearPass hardware appliances. If you do not have the virtual appliance resources to support a full workload, you should consider ordering the W-ClearPass Policy Manager hardware appliance.

Be sure that your system meets the recommended specifications required for the Policy Manager virtual appliance.

Supplemental Storage/Hard Disk Requirement

W-ClearPass VMware ships with a 20 GB hard disk volume. This must be supplemented with additional storage/hard disk by adding a virtual hard disk (see <u>Adding a Virtual Hard Disk on page 33</u> for details). The additional space required depends on the W-ClearPass virtual appliance version.

Processing and Memory Requirements

To ensure scalability, dedicate or reserve the processing and memory to the W-ClearPass VM instance. You must also ensure that the disk subsystem can maintain the IOPs (I/O operations per second) throughput as detailed below.

W-ClearPass Server I/O Rate

Most virtualized environments use a shared disk subsystem, assuming that each application will have bursts of I/O without a sustained high I/O throughput. W-ClearPass Policy Manager requires a continuous sustained high data-I/O rate.



For the latest information on the supported hypervisors and virtual hardware requirements, refer to the appropriate version of the W-ClearPass Release Notes at https://download.dell-pcw.com under the W-ClearPass 6.6.0 Upgrade folder. Access to this site requires log-in credentials.

Supported Hypervisors

W-ClearPass supports the following hypervisors:

VMware ESX 4.0

Recommended minimum version for CP-VA-500 and CP-VA-5K.

VMware ESX 4.0 does not support greater than the eight virtual CPUs required for the CP-VA-25K.

VMware ESXi versions 5.0, 5.1, 5.5, 6.0, and higher

Before Starting the W-ClearPass Installation

Before starting the W-ClearPass installation and configuration procedures for the virtual appliance, determine the following W-ClearPass server information on your network, note the corresponding values for the parameters listed in Table 6, and keep it for your records:

Table 6: W-ClearPass Server Configuration Information

Required Information	Value for Your Installation
Host name (Policy Manager server)	
Management interface IP address	
Management interface subnet mask	
Management interface gateway	
Data port IP address (optional)	NOTE: Make sure that the Data interface IP address is <i>not</i> in the same subnet as the Management interface IP address.
Data interface subnet mask (optional)	
Data interface gateway (optional)	

Required Information	Value for Your Installation
Primary DNS	
Secondary DNS	
NTP server (optional)	

vSphere Web Client W-ClearPass Installation Overview

W-ClearPass VMware software packages are distributed as Zip files.

The process of installing the W-ClearPass Policy Manager virtual appliance on a host that runs VMware vSphere Web Client consists of four stages:

1.

- Download the VMware ESXi package from the from the Dell Download site at <u>http://download.dell-pcw.com</u> to a folder accessible by your VMware ESXi server.
- 2. Follow the steps in the OVF wizard to deploy the OVF file, **but do not power on yet**.



There is only one OVF file with all the variant types and sizes selectable when the virtual appliance boots.

- 3. Add a new hard disk, based on the requirements for your type of virtual machine.
- 4. Power on and configure the virtual appliance.

W-ClearPass VMware Virtual Appliance Installation Setup

To set up the W-ClearPass Policy Manager virtual appliance installation on a host that runs VMware vSphere Web Client consists of four stages:

1. Download the Release Notes for the version of W-ClearPass that you want to install as a virtual appliance.



W-ClearPass Release Notes are available at <u>https://download.dell-pcw.com</u> under the W-ClearPass 6.6 Upgrade folder. Access to this site requires log-in credentials

- 2. Then check the recommended virtual hardware specifications and verify that your system meets those requirements.
- 3. Start the VMware vSphere Web Client.
- 4. Extract the files into a folder on your desktop.
- Using either the VMware vSphere Web Client or the standard vSphere Client, deploy the Open Virtualization Format (OVF) template that was downloaded and extracted in Steps 3 and 4.

The Deploy OVF Template opens.



If you are not using the vSphere Web Client or the standard vSphere Client, follow the instructions for your method of deploying the OVF file.

Figure 11 Deploy OVF Template: Selecting the Source Location

Deploy OVI	/F Template		?
1 Source	rce elect source	Select source Select the source location	
 Ib Read 1c Ac 2 Desti 2a Se 2b Se 2c Se 3 Read 	eview details ccept EULAs tination elect name and folder elect storage etup networks	Enter a URL to download and install the OVF package from the Internet, or browse to a location accessible from your computer, as a local hard drive, a network share, or a CD/DVD drive. URL Local file IVSers/avidal/Downloads/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-ovf/CPPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VM-x86_64-6.5.0.71095-ESX-CP-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500-0VF/CPM-VA-500	such

- 6. Select Local File, then click Browse.
- Navigate to the folder where you extracted the files, then click Next. The Review Details screen opens.
- Review the information presented, then click Next.
 The Accept EULAs screen opens.
- 9. Read the End User License Agreements (EULA) and click **Accept**, then click **Next**.

The Select Name and Folder screen opens.

Figure 12 Selecting the Name and Location for the Deployed Template

Deploy OVF Template	
1 Source ✓ 1a Select source ✓ 1b Review details ✓ 1c Accept EULAs	Select name and folder Specify a name and location for the deployed template Name: Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager Appliance Select a folder or datagenter
2 Destination 2a Select name and folder 2b Select storage 2c Setup networks 3 Ready to complete	Select a tolder or datacenter Q Search Image: Constraint of the sentity of the senter of the sentity of th

10. In the Select Name and Folder dialog:

The name of the template is set by default to W-ClearPass Policy Manager Appliance.

- a. Change the name to the desired virtual appliance name.
- b. Select the virtual appliance folder or data center where you want to deploy the W-ClearPass OVF file, then click **Next**.

The Select a Resource screen opens.

Figure 13 Selecting a Resource

Dep	loy OVF Template	
1	1 Source	Select a resource
~	1a Select source	Select where to run the deployed template
~	1b Review details	Select location to run the deployed template
~	1c Accept EULAs	Q Search
:	2 Destination	
~	2a Select name and folder	↓ III Sunnyvale LAB
~	2b Select a resource	.51
	2c Select storage	.52
	2d Setup networks	.53 .54

11. If required, choose the VMware host where W-ClearPass will be deployed, then click **Next**. The **Select Storage** screen opens.

	Figure 14	Selecting the Location to Store the File	es
--	-----------	------------------------------------------	----

Deploy OVF Template							
>	1 Source 1a Select source	Select storage Select location to store the	files for the	e deployed template	ł		
~	1b Review details	Select virtual disk format:	Thin Prov	ision			
~	1c Accept EULAs 2 Destination	VM Storage Policy:	None	le from the destinat	• • •	selected. Select the de	estination datastore
~	2a Select name and folder	machine configuration files	and all of	the virtual disks.	ion resource that you	Selected. Select the de	
~	2b Select storage	Name		Capacity	Provisioned	Free	Туре
	2c Setup networks	DS2		19.47 TB	26.22 TB	16.71 TB	NFS
	3 Ready to complete			17 TB	296.52 GB	16.71 TB	NFS
3 Ready to complete		DS1		6.83 TB	1.64 TB	6.68 TB	NFS





The virtual disk format specified in Figure 14 is **Thin Provision**. In a production environment, to ensure that the virtual appliance will not run out of disk space, Dell recommends using the **Thick Lazy Zeroed** virtual disk format.

The Setup Networks screen appears.

Figure 15 Configuring the Networks for VM Deployment

Deploy OVF Template							
1 Source ✓ 1a Select source	Setup networks Configure the networks the deployed template should use						
 1b Review details 	Source	Destination					
 1c Accept EULAs 	VM Network	VLAN110					
2 Destination							
 2a Select name and folder 							
 2b Select storage 							
✓ 2c Setup networks	IP protocol: IPv4	IP allocation: Static - Manual 🕕					
 3 Ready to complete 		-					
	Source: VM Network - Description The VM Network network Destination: VLAN110 - Protocol settings						

13. Specify the virtual network where W-ClearPass will reside, then click **Next**.

The **Ready to Complete** screen opens, which displays all the settings you chose for this OVF file deployment.

14. Review the settings for accuracy, and make any changes if necessary, then click **Finish**.

The OVF file is deployed in the selected network.

Adding a Virtual Hard Disk

After the OVF file has been deployed and before you power on, you must add a virtual hard disk to the VM hardware and make sure that the network adapters are assigned correctly.

1. From the W-ClearPass Policy Manager Appliance, select the **Summary** tab.

Figure 16 Virtual Appliance Summary Tab

Aruba ClearPass Policy	Manager Appliance Actions -			
Getting Started Summary	Monitor Manage Related Ob	jects		
Powered Off Launch Console	Aruba ClearPass Policy Manag Guest OS: CentOS 4/5/6 (Compatibility: ESX/ESXI 4.0 a VMware Tools: Not running, ve DNS Name: IP Addresses: Host: 10.162.104.54	ger Appliance 64-bit) Ind later (VM version 7) rsion:9344 (Current)		
VM Hardware		▼ VM Storage P	olicies	
▶ CPU 2 C	PU(s), 0 MHz used	VM Storage Polici	es	-
▶ Memory	4096 MB, 0 MB used	VM Storage Policy Compliance -		
Hard disk 1 20	Last Checked Date	Last Checked Date -		
▶ Network adapter 1 VL	AN110 (disconnected)			
▶ Network adapter 2 VL	AN111 (disconnected)			
▹ Video card 4 M	1B	▼ Tags		
▶ Other Ad	ditional Hardware	Assigned Tag	Category This list is emr	otv
Compatibility ES	X/ESXi 4.0 and later (VM version 7)		inio natio cinp	rty.
	Edit Settings			

2. Click Edit Settings.

The **Edit Settings** dialog opens.

Figure 17 Editing the Virtual Machine Settings

ClearPass 6.5 - Edit Settings						? •			
Virtual Hardware V	/M Options	SDRS Rules	vApp Op	otior	IS				
F 🔲 CPU		2		•	0				
Memory		4096		•	MB	-			
▶ → Hard disk 1		20	-	•	GB	•			
▶ G SCSI controller	0	LSI Logic Parallel							
Network adapte	er 1	VLAN110				•	√ Co	onnect	
Image: Network adapt	ter 2	VLAN111				•	√ Co	onnect	
Video card		Specify custor	m settings			-			
VMCI device									
 Other Devices 									
Upgrade		Schedule V	M Compat	ibili	ty Upgra	ade			
▶	I.	500	1	•	GB	-			
New dev	ice:	🔜 New Har	d Disk		-	A	dd		
Compatibility: ESX/ESXi 4.0 and later (VM version 7) OK Cancel									

- 3. Add a new virtual hard disk:
 - a. Consult the W-ClearPass Policy Manager Release Notes for determining the correct size of the virtual hard disk to add to your W-ClearPass virtual appliance.
 - b. From the **New Device** drop-down, select **New Hard Disk**.
 - c. Click Add.

The Virtual Hardware dialog opens.



🗗 Aruba ClearPa	ss Policy Mana	iger Applianc	e - Edit Settings				?₩
Virtual Hardware	VM Options	SDRS Rules	vApp Options]			
	2		• 6				
► Other De.							1
▶ Upgrade	S	chedule VM C	ompatibility Upgr	ade			
→ 🛄 New Hard d	sk 500		GB	-			
New d	evice:	🔜 New Ha	rd Disk	•	Add		
Compatibility: ESX/	ESXi 4.0 and la	ter (VM versio	n 7)			ОК	Cancel

d. Enter the size of the new hard disk, then click **OK**.



For the latest information on the recommended disk sizes for a virtual hard disk, refer to the W-ClearPass Release Notes at https://download.dell-pcw.com under the W-ClearPass 6.6 Upgrade folder. Access to this site requires log-in credentials.

- 4. Make sure that the network adapters are assigned correctly:
 - a. Network adapter 1: Management port
 - b. Network adapter 2: Data port
 - c. Click **OK**.

Launching the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance

To launch the W-ClearPass virtual appliance:

1. To power on the virtual appliance, from the W-ClearPass Policy Manager Appliance, choose **Actions** > **Power On**.

Figure 19 Powering on the Virtual Machine



The virtual appliance is now powered on.

 To launch the VM console, choose Actions > Launch Console. The initial VM console screen is displayed.

Figure 20 Initial Virtual Machine Console Screen

🛃 Aru	Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager Appliance-5K on localhost.us.avendasys.com							
File \	fiew VM							
	sd 2:0:0:0: [sda] Assuming drive cache: write through							
	sd 2:0:1:0: [sdb] Assuming drive cache: write through							
	sd 2:0:0:0: [sda] Assuming drive cache: write through							
	sd 2:0:1:0: [sdb] Assuming drive cache: write through							
	sd 2:0:0:0: [sda] Assuming drive cache: write through							
	WARNING: All data on the second disk [SCSI (0:1)] will be erased and that							
	disk will be setup as the primary boot image. Please ensure that disk has							
	the recommended capacity for the appliance version.							
	Enter 'y' or 'Y' to proceed:							
To relea	se cursor, press CTRL + ALT							

3. To proceed, enter y.

W-ClearPass setup and installation begins.

Two console screens appear sequentially, which indicate that first the W-ClearPass Installer reboots, then the virtual appliance reboots.

When the rebooting process is complete, the W-ClearPass virtual appliance is configured, and the virtual appliance will power on and boot up within a couple of minutes.



The whole process, from deploying the OVF image to the login banner screen, should take between 30 and 40 minutes.

- 4. After the W-ClearPass virtual appliance launches correctly, the virtual machine login banner is displayed.
- 5. Proceed to the next section, Completing the Virtual Appliance Setup.

Completing the Virtual Appliance Setup

To complete the virtual appliance setup:

- 1. Refer to and note the required W-ClearPass server configuration information listed in Table 6.
- 2. Log in to the virtual appliance using the following preconfigured credentials:
 - login: appadmin
 - password: eTIPS123

This initiates the Policy Manager Configuration wizard.

3. Configure the W-ClearPass virtual appliance.

Follow the prompts, replacing the placeholder entries in the following illustration with the information you entered in <u>Table 6</u>.

- Enter hostname:
- Enter Management Port IP Address:
- Enter Management Port Subnet Mask:
- Enter Management Port Gateway:
- Enter Data Port IP Address:
- Enter Data Port Subnet Mask:
- Enter Data Port Gateway:
- Enter Primary DNS:
- Enter Secondary DNS:

4. Specify the cluster password.



Setting the cluster password also changes the password for the CLI user **appadmin**, as well as the Administrative user **admin**. If you want the **admin** password to be unique, see <u>Changing the Administration Password on page 40</u>.

- a. Enter any string with a minimum of six characters, then you are prompted to confirm the cluster password.
- b. After this configuration is applied, use this new password for cluster administration and management of the W-ClearPass virtual appliance.

5. Configure the system date and time.

- a. Follow the prompts to configure the system date and time.
- b. To set the date and time by configuring the NTP server, use the primary and secondary NTP server information you entered in Table 6.

6. Apply the configuration.

Follow the prompts and do one of the following:

- a. To apply the configuration, press **Y**.
- To restart the configuration procedure, press **N**.
- To quit the setup process, press **Q**.

Configuration on the virtual appliance console is now complete. The next task is to activate the W-ClearPass license, which is described in the next section.

Applying and Activating the W-ClearPass License



Activating the W-ClearPass license is necessary for the virtual appliance only, not the hardware appliance, because the W-ClearPass license is included with the hardware appliance.

To activate and apply the W-ClearPass license:

- 1. After the configuration has been applied at the virtual appliance console, open a web browser and go to the management interface of W-ClearPass: **https://x.x.x.x/tips/**, where **x.x.x.x** is the IP address of the management interface defined for the W-ClearPass server in <u>Table 6</u>.
- 2. Accept any security warnings from your browser regarding the self-signed SSL certificate, which comes installed in W-ClearPass by default.

The Enter License Key screen is displayed.



- 3. Do the following:
 - a. In the **Select Application** drop-down, make sure the application is set to **Policy Manager**.
 - b. Make sure the I agree to the above terms and conditions check box is enabled.
 - c. In the Enter license key text box, enter your W-ClearPass license key.
 - d. Click Add License.

Upon successfully entering the license key, the **Admin Login** screen opens with a message indicating that you have 90 days to activate the product and a link to activate the product.

Figure 22 Activating W-ClearPass

You	have	90	day(s) 📥 <u>Act</u>	to iva	activate te Now	the	produ	ct
_								

Admin Login			
Username:			
Password:			
Log In			

4. To activate W-ClearPass on this virtual appliance, click **Activate Now**.

When you click **Activate Now**, W-ClearPassPolicy Manager attempts to activate the license over the Internet with W-Series license activation servers.

If the W-ClearPassPolicy Manager virtual appliance does not have Internet access, you can perform the license activation offline by following the steps for offline activation presented in the **Offline Activation** section shown in Figure 23.

Figure 23 Performing Offline Activation

You have 90 day(s) to activate the product
Online Activation
Offline Activation
If you are not connected to the Internet, you can download an Activation Request Token and obtain the Activation Key offline.
Step 1. Download an Activation Request Token Download
Step 2. Email the Activation Request Token to Aruba Networks Support (support@arubanetworks.com)
Step 3. Choose File no file selected
Upload the Activation Key received from Aruba Networks Support Upload
Undate License
Update License

After successfully activating W-ClearPass online, you will see a message above the **Admin Login** screen indicating that the product has been successfully activated.

Logging in to the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance

After a successful activation, the **Admin Login** dialog appears.

Figure 24 Logging in to the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance

Admin Login			
Username:	admin		
Password:	•••••		
Log In			

- 1. Log in to the W-ClearPass virtual appliance with the following credentials:
 - **Username**: admin
 - **Password**: Enter the cluster password defined in <u>Completing the Virtual Appliance Setup on page 36</u>.
- 2. Click Log In.

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager opens.



Figure 25 W-ClearPass Policy Manager Landing Page

Signing Up for Live Software Updates

Upon your initial login to W-ClearPass Policy Manager, you need to register for software updates.

1. Navigate to the Administration > Agents and Software Updates > Software Updates page.

A message is displayed indicating that the W-ClearPass virtual appliance is not signed up for live updates and that you must enter your subscription ID.

Figure 26 Entering the Subscription ID for Live Updates

Administration » Agents and Software Updates	Software Updates » Software Updates	* Cluster Upgrade * Cluster Update
	You are not signed up for live updates; enter your subscription ib and save.	
Subscription ID		
Subscription ID:		
		Save Reset

2. If the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server has Internet access, enter your subscription ID, then click **Save**. After successfully applying the subscription ID, you will see a message indicating that the subscription ID

was updated successfully and W-ClearPass is processing updates from the W-ClearPass Webservice. **Posture & Profile Data Updates** are downloaded and installed automatically, while **Firmware & Patch Updates** are merely displayed.

Changing the Administration Password

When the cluster password for this W-ClearPass server is set upon initial configuration (see <u>Completing the</u> <u>Virtual Appliance Setup on page 36</u>), the administration password is also set to the same password. If you wish

to assign a unique **admin** password, use this procedure to change it.

To change the administration password:

 In W-ClearPass, navigate to Administration > Users and Privileges > Admin Users. The Admin Users page opens.

Figure 27 Admin Users Page

Filter: User ID	▼ contains ▼	Go Clear Filter Show 10 ▼ records
# 🔲 User ID 🛦	Name	Privilege Level
1. admin	Super Admin	Super Administrator
2. 🔲 apiadmin	API Admin	API Administrator
Showing 1-2 of 2		Export Delete

2. Select the appropriate **admin** user.

The Edit Admin User dialog opens.

Figure 28 Changing the Administration Password

Edit Admin User	0
User ID:	admin
Name:	Super Admin
Password:	•••••
Verify Password:	•••••
Privilege Level	Super Administrator
	Save Cancel

3. Change the administration password, verify the new password, then click **Save**.

Powering Off the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance

This procedure gracefully shuts down the virtual appliance without having to log in.

To power off the W-ClearPass virtual appliance:

- 1. Connect to the command-line interface by choosing **Action** > **Open Console.**
- 2. Enter the following commands:
 - login: poweroff
 - password: poweroff

The W-ClearPass virtual appliance shuts down.

Using Microsoft Hyper-V to Install W-ClearPass on a Virtual Appliance

This section documents the procedures for installing the W-ClearPass Policy Manager virtual appliance on a host that runs Microsoft's hypvervisor, Hyper-V[™], as well as completing important administrative tasks, such as registering for W-ClearPass software updates and changing the admin password.

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- Before Starting the W-ClearPass Installation
- W-ClearPass Hyper-V Virtual Appliance Installation Summary
- Importing the Virtual Machine
- Adding a Hard Disk to a Virtual Machine
- Launching the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance
- <u>Completing the Virtual Appliance Configuration</u>
- <u>Applying and Activating the W-ClearPass License</u>
- Logging in to the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance
- Signing Up for Live Software Updates
- Changing the Administration Password
- <u>Powering Off the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance</u>

Introduction

Microsoft Hyper-V enables you to create and manage a virtualized computing environment by using virtualization technology that is built in to Windows Server. Installing Hyper-V installs the required components and optionally installs management tools.



This section assumes that Microsoft Hyper-V has been installed.

- For information about installing and starting Hyper-V on the Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 Enterprise with the Hyper-V Role, go to Install Hyper-V Role.
- For information about installing and starting Hyper-V on Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2, go to <u>Install</u> Hyper-V

Supported Hypervisors

W-ClearPass Policy Managersupports the following Hyper-V hypervisors:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2 Enterprise with Hyper-V Role
- Microsoft Hyper-V Server 2012 R2



For the latest information on the supported hypervisors and virtual hardware requirements, refer to the appropriate version of the W-ClearPass Release Notes at https://download.dell-pcw.com under the W-ClearPass 6.6 Upgrade folder. Access to this site requires log-in credentials.

Meeting the Recommended Hyper-V Server Specifications

Please carefully review all virtual appliance requirements, including functional IOP ratings, and verify that your system meets these requirements. These recommendations supersede earlier requirements that were published for W-ClearPass Policy Manager 6.6 installations.

Virtual appliance recommendations are adjusted to align with the requirements for W-ClearPass hardware appliances. If you do not have the virtual appliance resources to support a full workload, you should consider ordering the W-ClearPass Policy Manager hardware appliance

Supplemental Storage/Hard Disk Requirements

W-ClearPassHyper-V ships with a 20 GB hard disk volume. This must be supplemented with additional storage/hard disk by adding a virtual hard disk (see Adding a Hard Disk to a Virtual Machine on page 48 for

details). The additional space required depends on the W-ClearPass virtual appliance version.

Processing and Memory Requirements

To ensure scalability, dedicate or reserve the processing and memory to the W-ClearPass VM instance. You must also ensure that the disk subsystem can maintain the IOPs (I/O operations per second) throughput as detailed below.

W-ClearPass Server I/O Rate

Most virtualized environments use a shared disk subsystem, assuming that each application will have bursts of I/O without a sustained high I/O throughput. W-ClearPass Policy Manager requires a continuous sustained high data I/O rate.

Before Starting the W-ClearPass Installation

Before starting the installation and configuration procedures for the virtual appliance, determine the following information for the W-ClearPass server on your network, note the corresponding values for the parameters listed in Table 7, and keep it for your records:

Required Information	Value for Your Installation
Host name (Policy Manager server)	
Management interface IP address	
Management interface subnet mask	
Management interface gateway	
Data interface IP address (optional)	NOTE: Make sure that the Data interface IP address is <i>not</i> in the same subnet as the Management interface IP address.
Data interface subnet mask (optional)	
Data interface gateway (optional)	
Primary DNS	
Secondary DNS	
NTP server (optional)	

Table 7: W-ClearPass Server Configuration Information

W-ClearPass Hyper-V Virtual Appliance Installation Summary

The process of installing the W-ClearPass Policy Manager virtual appliance on one or more hosts that runs Microsoft Hyper-V consists of four stages:

1.

- 1. Download the Microsoft Hyper-V package from the from the Dell Download site.
- 2. Import the virtual machine.
 - a. Choose the import type.
 - b. If required, specify the virtual switch that the Management Interface and Data Interface will be connected to.
- 3. Add a new virtual hard disk.
 - a. Configure the disk format, type, and size based on the requirements for your virtual appliance.
- 4. Power on and configure the virtual appliance.

Instructions for these procedures are provided in the following sections.

Importing the Virtual Machine

Microsoft Hyper-V gives you the ability to import virtual appliances that have not been previously exported. This is extremely helpful in situations where a host OS becomes corrupted, or if the most recent good backup of a virtual appliance is a file-level backup of the host.

To import the virtual appliance:

- 1.
- 1. Download the Microsoft Hyper-V package from the from the Dell Download site at <u>http://download.dell-pcw.com</u> to a folder accessible by your Microsoft Hyper-V server.
- 2. To extract the files, unzip the files to a folder on your server.
- 3. Open up the Hyper-V Manager Console.
- 4. From the Hyper-V Manager, select the **name of the Hyper-V server**, then right-click and select **Import Virtual Machine**.

Figure 29 Selecting the "Import Virtual Machine" Option



The **Before You Begin** dialog opens.

5. Click **Next**.

The **Locate Folder** dialog opens.



	Import Virtual Machine
Locate Folder	r
Before You Begin	Specify the folder containing the virtual machine to import.
Locate Folder	Folder: 4-6.5.0.71095-HYPERV-CP-VA-500-ovf/HYPERV-CP-VA-500/Virtual Machines
Select Virtual Machine	
Choose Import Type	
Summary	

 In the Locate Folder step, select the folder you unzipped in Step 2, then click Next. The Select Virtual Machine dialog opens.

Figure 31 Selecting the Virtual Machine

	Import Virtual Mach	ine 🛛 🗙		
Select Virtual Machine				
Before You Begin	Select the virtual machine to import:			
Locate Folder	Name	Date Created		
Select Virtual Machine	HYPERV-CP-VA-500	2/17/2015 11:06:48 AM		
Choose Import Type				
Summary				

7. Make sure the correct virtual appliance is highlighted, then click **Next**.

The Choose Import Type dialog opens.

Figure 32 Specifying the Import Type

2	Import Virtual Machine	
Choose Imp	ort Type	
Before You Begin	Choose the type of import to perform:	
Locate Folder	Register the virtual machine in-place (use the existing unique ID)	
Select Virtual Machine	 Restore the virtual machine (use the existing unique ID) 	
Choose Import Type	 Copy the virtual machine (create a new unique ID) 	
Summary		

8. In the Choose Import Type step, select Copy the virtual machine, then click Next.



When you choose **Copy the virtual machine**, Hyper-V creates new and unique identifiers for the virtual appliance.

The Choose Folders for Virtual Machine Files dialog opens.



2	Import Virtual Machine				
Choose Folders for Virtual Machine Files					
Before You Begin Locate Folder Select Virtual Machine Choose Import Type	legin You can specify new or existing folders to store the virtual machine files. Otherwise, the wizard imports the files to default Hyper-V folders on this computer, or to folders specified in the virtual machine configuration. I Machine Store the virtual machine in a different location ort Type Virtual machine configuration folder:				
Choose Destination Choose Storage Folders	C:\VirtualMachines\ Brows	e			
Summary Snapshot store:					
	C:\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Hyper-V Brows	e			
	Smart Paging folder:				
	C:\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Hyper-V Brows	e			

- 9. You can choose to either specify an alternate location to store the virtual appliance's files or accept the defaults:
 - a. To specify an alternate location to store the virtual appliance's files, click (enable) the **Store the virtual machine in a different location** check box, specify the following folders, then click **Next**:
 - Virtual machine configuration folder
 - Snapshot folder
 - Smart Paging folder
 - b. To accept the default folders for the virtual appliance's files, click **Next**.

The Choose Folders to Store Virtual Hard Disks dialog opens.

Figure 34 Specifying Folders to Store Virtual Hard Disks

	Import Virtual Machine
Choose Folde	ers to Store Virtual Hard Disks
Before You Begin Locate Folder Select Virtual Machine Choose Import Type Choose Destination	Where do you want to store the imported virtual hard disks for this virtual machine? Location: C:\Virtual Hard Disks\ Browse
Choose Storage Folders Summary	

10. Accept the default virtual hard drive storage folder, or browse to a new location to change it to your preferred location, then click **Next**.



If the virtual appliance being imported was configured to use physical disks in pass-through mode, you will have the opportunity to either remove the storage from the virtual appliance's configuration or attach new physical disks in pass-through mode.

If an error occurs indicating that the virtual switch "SwitchManagement" could not be found, the **Connect Network** dialog opens.



2	Import Virtual Machine
Connect Net	work
Before You Begin Locate Folder Select Virtual Machine Choose Import Type Choose Destination Choose Storage Folders Connect Network Connect Network Summary	This page allows you to connect to virtual switches that are available on the destination computer. The following configuration errors were found for virtual machine 'HYPERV-CP-VA-500'. Could not find Ethernet switch 'SwitchManagement'. Specify the virtual switch you want to use on computer "HYPERV". Connection: Not Connected

11. From the **Connection** drop-down, choose the virtual switch that will be used for the Management interface on the W-ClearPass Policy Manager virtual appliance, then click **Next**.

The following screen will be displayed to allow you to (optionally) specify the Data interface of the W-ClearPass Policy Manager virtual appliance.

Figure 36	Specifying the	Data Interface	(Optional)
-----------	----------------	----------------	------------

7	Import Virtual Machine	x
Connect Net	work	
Before You Begin Locate Folder Select Virtual Machine Choose Import Type Choose Destination Choose Storage Folders Connect Network Connect Network	This page allows you to connect to virtual switches that are available on the destination computer. The following configuration errors were found for virtual machine 'HYPERV-CP-VA-500'. Could not find Ethernet switch 'SwitchData'. Specify the virtual switch you want to use on computer "HYPERV". Connection: Not Connected	

- 12. You can choose to either specify the virtual switch that will be used for the Data interface or bypass this dialog.
 - a. To specify the virtual switch that will be used for the Data interface, from the **Connection** drop-down, choose the virtual switch that will be used for the Data interface, then click **Next**.
 - b. To bypass this configuration option, leave **Not connected** selected in the **Connection** drop-down, then click **Next**.

The **Completing Import Wizard** screen opens. This screen provides a summary of the import virtual appliance configuration that you specified.

13. Review the settings displayed in the **Summary** page, and if they are correct, click **Finish**.

This completes the procedure to import the virtual appliance.

Adding a Hard Disk to a Virtual Machine



Do not create the virtual hard disk in a folder that is marked for encryption. Virtual hard disks are stored as .vhd files. Hyper-V does not support the use of storage media if Encrypting File System (EFS) has been used to encrypt the .vhd file. However, you can use files stored on a volume that uses Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption.

To add a hard disk to a virtual machine:

- 1. Open Hyper-V Manager.
- 2. In the **Results** pane, under **Virtual Machines**, select the virtual appliance that you want to configure.
- 3. In the Action pane, under the name of the virtual appliance, click Settings.

The **Settings** page opens.

Figure 37 Specifying the Controller

Sett Sett	ings	for HYPERV-CP-VA-500 on WINHYPERV-2
HYPERV-CP-VA-500	¥	
Add Hardware Marchine BIOS Boot from CD Memory 4096 MB Processor 2 Virtual processors	*	IDE Controller You can add hard drives and CD/DVD drives to your IDE controller. Select the type of drive you want to attach to the controller and then click Add. Hard Drive DVD Drive
IDE Controller 0 Hard Drive HYPERV-CP-VA-500.vhdx IDE Controller 1 OVD Drive None SCSI Controller	~	Add You can configure a hard drive to use a virtual hard disk or a physical hard disk after you attach the drive to the controller.
		OK Cancel Apply

4. To select the controller to attach the virtual hard disk to, in the Navigation (left) pane, select **IDE Controller 0**, then click **Add**.

The Hard Drive dialog opens.

Figure 38 Configuring the Hard Drive

M Add Hardware	A Hard Drive
BIOS Boot from CD	You can change how this virtual hard disk is attached to the virtual machine. If an operating system is installed on this disk, changing the attachment might prevent the
Memory	virtual machine from starting.
4096 MB	Controller: Location:
Processor 2 Virtual processors	IDE Controller 0 v 1 (in use) v
IDE Controller 0	Media
Hard Drive HYPERV-CP-VA-500.vhdx	You can compact, convert, expand, merge, reconnect or shrink a virtual hard disk by editing the associated file. Specify the full path to the file.
🗉 🧰 Hard Drive	• Virtual hard disk:
<file></file>	
IDE Controller 1	
DVD Drive	New Edit Inspect Browse

- 5. In the Hard Drive dialog:
 - a. Controller: Set to IDE Controller 0.
 - b. Location: Set to 1 (in use).

- Below the Virtual hard disk field, click New.
 The New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard opens.
- From the Before You Begin dialog, click Next. The Choose Disk Format dialog opens.

Figure 39 Specifying the Disk Format

L	New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard
Choose Disk	Format
Before You Begin Choose Disk Format Choose Disk Type Specify Name and Location Configure Disk Summary	What format do you want to use for the virtual hard disk? VHD Supports virtual hard disks up to 2,040 GB in size. Image: WHDX This format supports virtual disks up to 64 TB and is resilient to consistency issues that might occur from power failures. This format is not supported in operating systems earlier than Windows Server 2012.
	< Previous Next > Finish Cancel

 For the disk format, choose VHDX, then click Next. The Choose Disk Type dialog opens.

Figure 40 Specifying the Virtual Hard Disk Type

2	New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard
Choose Disk	сТуре
Before You Begin Choose Disk Format Choose Disk Type Specify Name and Location Configure Disk Summary	 What type of virtual hard disk do you want to create? Fixed size This type of disk provides better performance and is recommended for servers running applications with high levels of disk activity. The virtual hard disk file that is created initially uses the size of the virtual hard disk and does not change when data is deleted or added. Dynamically expanding This type of disk provides better use of physical storage space and is recommended for servers running applications that are not disk intensive. The virtual hard disk file that is created is small initially and changes as data is added. Differencing This type of disk is associated in a parent-child relationship with another disk that you want to leave intact. You can make changes to the data or operating system without affecting the parent disk, so that you can revert the changes easily. All children must have the same virtual hard disk format as the parent (VHD or VHDX).
	< Previous Next > Finish Cancel

For the disk type, choose Fixed size, then click Next.
 The Specify Name and Location dialog opens.

Figure 41 Specifying the Name and Location of the Hard Disk File

5	New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard	x
Specify Nam	e and Location	
Before You Begin Choose Disk Format Choose Disk Type Specify Name and Location Configure Disk Summary	Specify the name and location of the virtual hard disk file. Name: CP-VA-500_Jvhdx Location: C:\Users\Public\Documents\Hyper-V\Virtual Hard Disks\	Browse
	< Previous Next > Finish	Cancel

- 10. Do the following:
 - a. Enter the name of the virtual hard disk file.
 - b. Browse to the location of the virtual hard disk file, select it, then click **Next**.

The Configure Disk dialog opens.

Figure 42 Configuring the New Virtual Hard Disk

2	New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard	x
Configure D	isk	
Before You Begin Choose Disk Format Choose Disk Type Specify Name and Location	You can create a blank virtual hard disk or copy the contents of an existing physical disk. Create a new blank virtual hard disk Size: 500 GB (Maximum: 64 TB) Copy the contents of the specified physical disk: 	
Summary	Physical Hard Disk Size \\.\PHYSICALDRIVE0 14901 GB O Copy the contents of the specified virtual hard disk Path:	'SE
	< Previous Next > Finish Car	ncel

11. Select Create a new blank virtual hard disk.

a. Then enter the size of the of virtual hard disk in Gigabytes (GB).



For the latest information on the recommended disk sizes for a virtual hard disk, refer to the W-ClearPass Release Notes at <u>https://download.dell-pcw.com</u> under the W-ClearPass 6.6 Upgrade folder. Access to this site requires log-in credentials.

b. When finished, click **Next**.

The **Completing the New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard** screen opens.

12. Review the settings displayed in the **Summary** page, and if they are correct, click **Finish**.

This completes the procedure to add a virtual hard disk.

Additional Virtual Hard Disk Considerations

Additional considerations to take into account when adding virtual hard disks are as follows:

- By default, membership in the local Administrators group, or equivalent, is the minimum required to complete this procedure. However, an administrator can use Authorization Manager to modify the authorization policy so that a user or group of users can complete this procedure.
- Virtual hard disks are stored as .vhd files, which makes them portable, but it also poses a potential security risk. We recommend that you mitigate this risk by taking precautions such as storing the .vhd files in a secure location.
- The virtual hard disk is created when you click **Finish** to complete the wizard. Depending on the options you choose for the virtual hard disk, the process can take a considerable amount of time.
- Virtual hard disks cannot be stored in a folder that uses New Technology File System (NTFS) compression.
- You can make certain changes to a virtual hard disk after you create it. For example, you can convert it from one type of virtual hard disk to another. You can use the **Edit Virtual Hard Disk** wizard to make these changes.

Launching the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance

To launch the W-ClearPass virtual appliance:

1. To power on the virtual appliance, from the W-ClearPass Policy Manager appliance, right-click the **name of the virtual machine**, then choose **Start.**

Figure 43 Starting the Virtual Machine

Virtual Mac	nines					
Name 📩	S	State	CPU Usage	Assigned Memory	Uptime	Status
HYPERVO ²⁴	Connect Settings Start Snapshot Move Export Rename					
Snapshots	Delete Enable Rep Help	lication	The se	lected virtual machine has	no snapshots.	

The virtual appliance powers on.

2. To launch the VM console, right-click the **name of the virtual machine**, then choose **Connect**.

Figure 44 Launching the VM Console

Name 💧		State	CPU Usage	Assigned Memory	Uptime	Status
HYPERV-CP-V.	Conr	nect	<u>.</u>	4096 MB	00:00:14	
	Setti	ngs				
	Turn	Off				
	Shut	Down				
	Save					
	Paus	e				
	Rese	t				
Snapshots	Snap	shot				
	Mov Rena Enab	e me le Replication	The	selected virtual machine h	as no snapshots.	
	Help					

The initial virtual machine console screen is displayed.

Figure 45 Initial Virtual Machine Console Screen



3. To proceed with the installation, enter **y**.

W-ClearPass setup and installation begins.

Two console screens appear sequentially—the first screen indicates that the W-ClearPass Installer is rebooting, and the second screen indicates that the virtual appliance is rebooting.

When the rebooting process is complete, the W-ClearPass virtual appliance is configured, and the virtual appliance will power on and boot up within a couple of minutes.



The whole process typically takes between 30 and 40 minutes.

- 4. After the W-ClearPass virtual appliance launches correctly, the virtual applicance login banner is displayed.
- 5. Proceed to the next section, <u>Completing the Virtual Appliance Configuration</u>.

Completing the Virtual Appliance Configuration

To complete the virtual appliance configuration:

- 1. Refer to and note the required W-ClearPass server configuration information listed in Table 7.
- 2. Log in to the virtual appliance using the following preconfigured credentials :
 - login: appadmin
 - password: eTIPS123

This initiates the Policy Manager Configuration wizard.

3. Configure the W-ClearPass virtual appliance.

Follow the prompts, replacing the placeholder entries in the following illustration with the information you entered in <u>Table 7</u>.

- Enter hostname:
- Enter Management Port IP Address:
- Enter Management Port Subnet Mask:
- Enter Management Port Gateway:
- Enter Data Port IP Address:
- Enter Data Port Subnet Mask:
- Enter Data Port Gateway:
- Enter Primary DNS:
- Enter Secondary DNS:

4. Specify the cluster password.

Setting the cluster password also changes the password for the CLI user **appadmin**, as well as the Administration user **admin**. If you want the **admin** password to be unique, see <u>Changing the Administration Password on page 56</u>.

- a. Enter any string with a minimum of six characters, then you are prompted to confirm the cluster password.
- b. After this configuration is applied, use this new password for cluster administration and management of the W-ClearPass virtual appliance.

5. Configure the system date and time.

- a. Follow the prompts to configure the system date and time.
- b. To set the date and time by configuring the NTP server, use the primary and secondary NTP server information you entered in Table 7.

6. Apply the configuration.

- a. To apply the configuration, press **Y**.
- To restart the configuration procedure, press **N**.
- To quit the setup process, press **Q**.

Configuration on the virtual appliance console is now complete. The next task is to activate the W-ClearPass license.



Applying and Activating the W-ClearPass License



Activating the W-ClearPass license is necessary for the virtual appliance only, not the hardware appliance, because the W-ClearPass license is included with the hardware appliance.

To activate and apply the W-ClearPass license:

- 1. After the configuration has been applied at the virtual appliance console, open a web browser and go to the management interface of W-ClearPass Policy Manager: **https://x.x.x./tips/**, where **x.x.x.x** is the IP address of the management interface defined for the W-ClearPass server in Table 7.
- 2. Accept any security warnings from your browser regarding the self-signed SSL certificate, which comes installed in W-ClearPass by default.

The Enter License Key screen is displayed.

Figure 46 Entering the License Key

To continue, please enter the product license key		
Select Application	Policy Manager 🗧	
inter license key	SP5D-UPJLXQ-37SN-N562FO-CDFOD3-DGBD-ZNS7WK-JJPZUC-PR23-DCPTQA	
forms and Conditio	one contraction of the second s	
contra and contact		
Aruba N	etworks, Inc. End-User Software	
Aruba N	etworks, Inc. End-User Software	
Aruba N License	etworks, Inc. End-User Software Agreement ("Agreement")	
Aruba N License	etworks, Inc. End-User Software Agreement ("Agreement") T	
Aruba N License IMPORTAN	etworks, Inc. End-User Software Agreement ("Agreement") T	
Aruba N License IMPORTAN YOU SHOULD CARE SOFTWARE PROGR	etworks, Inc. End-User Software Agreement ("Agreement") T FULLY READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS BEFORE INSTALLATION OR USE OF ANY AMS FROM ARUBA NETWORKS, INC. AND ITS AFFILIATES OR AIRWAVE WIRELESS	
Aruba N License IMPORTAN YOU SHOULD CARR SOFTWARE PROOR (COLLECTIVELY YA	etworks, Inc. End-User Software Agreement ("Agreement") T EFULLY READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS BEFORE INSTALLATION OR USE OF ANY AMS FROM ARUBA NETWORKS, INC. AND ITS AFFILIATES OR AIRWAVE WIRELESS RUBA: INSTALLATION. OR USE OF SUICH SOFTWARE PROGRAMS SHALL BE DEFEMED	
Aruba N License IMPORTAN YOU SHOULD CARR SOFTWARE PROGR (COLLECTIVELY TA I agree to the abo	etworks, Inc. End-User Software Agreement ("Agreement") T EfULLY READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS BEFORE INSTALLATION OR USE OF ANY AMS FROM ARUBA NETWORKS, INC. AND ITS AFFILIATES OR AIRWAVE WIRELESS RUBA". INSTALLATION. OR USE OF SUCH SOFTWARE PROGRAMS SHALL BE DEFEMED over terms and conditions.	
Aruba N License IMPORTAN YOU SHOULD CARI SOFTWARE PROGR (COLLECTIVELY TA	etworks, Inc. End-User Software Agreement ("Agreement") T FULLY READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS BEFORE INSTALLATION OR USE OF ANY MAS FROM ARUBA NETWORKS, INC. AND ITS AFFILIATES OR AIRWAVE WIRELESS RUBACT INSTALLATION OR USE OF SUCH SOFTWARE PROGRAMS SHALL BE DEFMED ove terms and conditions.	

- 3. Do the following:
 - a. In the **Select Application** drop-down, make sure the application is set to **Policy Manager**.
 - b. Make sure the **I agree to the above terms and conditions** check box is enabled.
 - c. In the Enter license key text box, enter your W-ClearPass license key.
 - d. Click Add License.

Upon successfully entering the license key, the **Admin Login** screen appears with a message indicating that you have 90 days to activate the product and a link to activate the product.

Figure 47 Activating W-ClearPass

You have 90 day(s) to activate the product				
		Admin Login		
	Username:			
	Password:			
		Log In		

4. To activate W-ClearPass on this virtual appliance, click **Activate Now**.

W-ClearPass Policy Manager attempts to activate the license over the Internet with W-Series license activation servers.

If the W-ClearPass Policy Manager virtual appliance does not have Internet access, you can perform the license activation offline by following the steps for offline activation presented in the **Offline Activation** section shown in Figure 48.



	You have 90 day(s) to activate the product
Online A	ctivation ctivate Now
	Offline Activation
If you are no Token and o	t connected to the Internet, you can download an Activation Request btain the Activation Key offline.
Step 1. Dow	nload an Activation Request Token Download
Step 2. ^{Ema} (sup	il the Activation Request Token to Aruba Networks Support port@arubanetworks.com)
Step 3. Ch	oose File no file selected

After successfully activating W-ClearPass online, you will see a message above the **Admin Login** screen indicating that the product has been successfully activated.

Logging in to the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance

After a successful activation, the **Admin Login** dialog opens.

Figure 49 Logging in to the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance

Admin Login		
Username:	admin	
Password:		
Log In		

- 1. Log in to the W-ClearPass virtual appliance with the following credentials:
 - Username: admin
 - Password: Enter the cluster password defined in <u>Completing the Virtual Appliance Configuration on</u> page 53.
- 2. Click Log In.

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager Landing Page opens.



Figure 50 W-ClearPass Policy Manager Landing Page

Signing Up for Live Software Updates

Upon your initial log-in to W-ClearPass Policy Manager, you should register for live software updates.

1. Navigate to the Administration > Agents and Software Updates > Software Updates page.

A message is displayed indicating that the W-ClearPass virtual appliance is not signed up for live updates and that you must enter your **subscription ID**.

Figure 51 Entering the Subscription ID for Live Updates

Administration » Agents and Software Updates » Software Updates Software Updates		** Cluster Upgrade ** Cluster Update
	Tou are not signed up for nive updates, enter your subscription to and save.	
Subscription ID		
Subscription ID:		
		Save Reset

2. If the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server has Internet access, enter your **subscription ID**, then click **Save**. After successfully applying the subscription ID, you will see a message indicating that the subscription ID

was updated successfully and W-ClearPass is processing updates from the W-ClearPass Webservice.

Note that **Posture & Profile Data Updates** are downloaded and installed automatically, while Firmware & Patch Updates are merely displayed.

Changing the Administration Password

When the cluster password for this W-ClearPass server is set upon initial configuration (see <u>Completing the</u> <u>Virtual Appliance Configuration on page 53</u>), the administration password is also set to the same password. If

you wish to assign a unique **admin** password, use this procedure to change it.

To change the administration password:

 In W-ClearPass, navigate to Administration > Users and Privileges > Admin Users. The Admin Users page opens.

Figure 52 Admin Users Page

Filter: User ID	▼ contains ▼	+ Go Clear Filter Show 10 ▼ records
# 🔲 User ID 🛦	Name	Privilege Level
1. 🔲 admin	Super Admin	Super Administrator
2. 🔲 apiadmin	API Admin	API Administrator
Showing 1-2 of 2		Export Delete

2. Select the appropriate **admin** user.

The Edit Admin User dialog opens.

Figure 53 Changing the Administration Password

Edit Admin User	•
User ID:	admin
Name:	Super Admin
Password:	•••••
Verify Password:	•••••
Privilege Level	Super Administrator
	Save Cancel

3. Change the administration password, verify the new password, then click **Save**.

Powering Off the W-ClearPass Virtual Appliance

This procedure gracefully shuts down the virtual appliance without having to log in.

To power off the W-ClearPass virtual appliance:

- 1. To connect to the command-line interface, right-click the **name of the virtual machine**, then choose **Connect**.
- 2. Enter the following commands:
 - login: poweroff
 - password: poweroff

The W-ClearPass virtual appliance shuts down.

Accessing the W-ClearPass Administrative Interface

This section contains the following information:

- Supported Browsers
- Accessing the Administrative Interface
- <u>Changing the Administration Password</u>

• Accessing W-ClearPass Online Help

Supported Browsers

The supported browsers for W-ClearPass are:

- Mozilla Firefox on Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8.x, Windows 10, and Macintosh OS X
- Google Chrome for Macintosh OS X and Windows
- Apple Safari 3.x and later on Macintosh OS X
- Mobile Safari 5.x on iOS
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 10 and later on Windows 7 and Windows 8.x



Microsoft Edge on Windows 10

Accessing the Administrative Interface

To access the W-ClearPass Policy Manager administrative interface:



Use Firefox (3.0 or higher) or Internet Explorer (7.0.5 or higher) .

- 1. Navigate to *https://<hostname>/tips*, where *<hostname>* is the host name you configured during the initial configuration (for details, see <u>Configuring the W-ClearPass Hardware Appliance on page 22</u>).
 - If you're accessing W-ClearPass via a virtual machine, you are prompted to enter the license key. The following screen opens.

Figure 54 Activating W-ClearPass

You have 58 day(s) to activate the product Activate Now

Admin Login		
Username:		
Password:		
Log In		

- 2. If the W-ClearPass appliance is connected to the Internet, click Activate Now.
 - If the W-ClearPass appliance is *not* connected to the Internet, click **Download** to download the Activation Request Token.
- 3. Contact <u>Dell Support</u> and provide your technician with the downloaded Activation Request Token as an attachment.
 - a. Once you receive the activation key from Dell Support, save it to a known location on your computer.
 - b. To select the activation key, return to this screen and click **Browse**.
 - c. To upload the activation key, click **Upload**.

W-ClearPass Policy Manager is now activated. The Admin Login dialog opens.

Figure 55 Admin Login Dialog

Admin Login			
Username:			
Password:			
Log In			

- 4. Log in using the following credentials, then click **Log In**:
 - Username: admin
 - Password: eTIPS123

Changing the Administration Password

The recommended next task is to change the administration password for this W-ClearPass server.

To change the administration password:

 In W-ClearPass, navigate to Administration > Users and Privileges > Admin Users. The Admin Users page opens.

Figure 56 Admin Users Page

Filter: User ID	▼ contains ▼	Go Clear Filter Show 10 records
# 🔲 User ID 🔺	Name	Privilege Level
1. 🔲 admin	Super Admin	Super Administrator
2. 🔲 apiadmin	API Admin	API Administrator
Showing 1-2 of 2		Export Delete

2. Select the appropriate Admin user.

The Edit Admin User dialog appears.

Figure 57 Changing the Administration Password

Edit Admin User	8
User ID:	admin
Name:	Super Admin
Password:	•••••
Verify Password:	•••••
Privilege Level	Super Administrator
	Save Cancel

3. Change the administration password, then click **Save**.

Accessing W-ClearPass Online Help

The *W-ClearPass Policy Manager User Guide* is incorporated into the Online Help system. All Policy Manager features include context-sensitive help.

To access context-sensitive help, click the **Help** link at the top right-hand corner of any W-ClearPass screen.

Maintaining W-ClearPass Policy Manager Services

This section contains the following information:

- Starting or Stopping W-ClearPass Services
- Summary of the Server Configuration Page
- Subset of CLI for W-ClearPass Maintenance Tasks

Starting or Stopping W-ClearPass Services

From the **Services Control** page, you can view the status of a service (that is, see whether a service is running or not), and stop or start Policy Manager services, including any Active Directory domains to which the current server is now joined.

To access the Services Control page:

- In W-ClearPass, navigate to Administration > Server Manager > Server Configuration. The Server Configuration page opens.
- 2. Click the row that lists the W-ClearPass server of interest.

The Server Configuration screen for the selected W-ClearPass server opens.

3. Select the **Services Control** tab.

The **Services Control** page opens.

Figure 58	Server Configuration >	Services (Control Page
-----------	------------------------	------------	--------------

Syste	em Services Control	Service Parameters	System Monitoring	Network FIPS	
_	Service Name			Status	Action
1.	AirGroup notification service	e		Running	Stop
2.	Async DB write service			Running	Stop
3.	Async network services			Running	Stop
4.	DB change notification ser	ver		Running	Stop
5.	DB replication service			Running	Stop
6.	Micros Fidelio FIAS			Running	Stop
7.	Multi-master cache			Running	Stop
8.	Policy server			Running	Stop
9.	Radius server			Running	Stop
10.	System auxiliary services			Running	Stop
11.	System monitor service			Running	Stop
12.	Tacacs server			Running	Stop
13.	Virtual IP service			Stopped	Start
14.	AMG-AD Domain service			Running	Stop
<u> < Ва</u>	ck to Server Configuration	1			Save Cancel



You will notice that the Virtual IP service is the only service that is not running. It's normal for the Virtual IP service to be stopped when this service is not being used.

If a service is stopped, you can use its Start button to restart it.

• You can also start an individual service from the command line:

service start <*service_name*>

• You can start all the services from the command line:

service start all

Summary of the Server Configuration Page

The **Server Configuration** page provides many options. <u>Table 8</u> describes each of the top-level server configuration options that are available. For details, refer to the "Server Configuration" chapter in the *W*-*ClearPass Policy Manager User Guide*.

 Table 8: Description of the Server Configuration Page

Tab	Description	Comments	
System	Displays server identity and connection parameters.		
Services Control	You can view the status of a Policy Manager service (that is, see whether a service is running or not), and stop or start services.		
Service Parameters	This option allows you to change the system parameters for all services.	The options on this page vary based on the service selected.	
System Monitoring	This option allows you to configure SNMP parameters, ensuring that external MIB browsers can browse the system-level MIB objects exposed by the Policy Manager appliance.	This ensures that external Management Information Base (MIB) browsers can browse the system-level MIB objects exposed by the Policy Manager appliance. The options on this page vary based on the SNMP version that you select.	
Network	 Use the Network page to: Create generic routing encapsulation (GRE) tunnels and VLANs related to guest users. Control which applications can have access to the node. 	 A GRE tunnel creates a virtual point-topoint link between controllers over a standard IP network or the Internet. To create VLANs, your network infrastructure must support tagged 802.1Q packets on the physical interface selected. NOTE: VLAN ID 1 is often reserved for use by certain network management components—avoid using this ID unless you know it will not conflict with a VLAN already defined in your network. 	
FIPS	Enables W-ClearPass to operate in Federal Information Processing Standard mode.	For most users, this tab should be ignored. NOTE: Enabling FIPS mode resets the database.	

Subset of CLI for W-ClearPass Maintenance Tasks

The CLI provides a way to manage and configure Policy Manager information.

You can access the CLI from the console using the serial port on the W-ClearPass appliance hardware, or remotely using SSH, or use the VMware or Hyper-V console to run the virtual appliance.

CLI Task Examples

View the Policy Manager Data and Management Port IP Address and DNS Configuration

[appadmin] #show ip

Reconfigure DNS or Add a New DNS

[appadmin]#configure dns <primary> [secondary] [tertiary]

Reconfigure or Add Management and Data Ports

[appadmin] #configure ip <mgmt | data > <ipadd> netmask <netmask address> gateway <gateway address>

Flag/Parameter	Description
ip <mgmt data> <ip address></ip </mgmt data>	Network interface type: <i>mgmt</i> or <i>data</i>Server IP address
netmask <netmask address></netmask 	Netmask address
gateway <gateway address></gateway 	Gateway address

Configure the Date

Configuring the time and time zone is optional.

[appadmin]#configure date -d <date> [-t <time>] [-z <timezone>]

Configure the Host Name for the Node

[appadmin]#configure hostname <hostname>

Join the W-ClearPass Policy Manager Appliance to the Active Directory Domain

If you are using Active Directory to authenticate users, be sure to join the W-ClearPass Policy Manager appliance to the Active Directory domain (for more information, see <u>Joining an Active Directory Domain on page 95</u>).

[appadmin]#ad netjoin <domain-controller.domain-name> [domain NETBIOS_name]

Flag/Parameter	Description
<domain- controller.domain- name></domain- 	Required. This is the name of the host to be joined to the domain. NOTE: Use the Fully Qualified Domain Name.
[domain NetBlOS name]	Optional.

This chapter describes how to prepare the Mobility Controller in order to integrate with W-ClearPass Policy Manager.

This chapter includes the following information:

- Adding a Mobility Controller to W-ClearPass Policy Manager
- Adding a W-ClearPass/RADIUS Server to the Mobility Controller
- Adding the W-ClearPass/RADIUS Server to a Server Group
- Configuring an AAA Profile for 802.1X Authentication
- Configuring a Virtual AP Profile
- Configuring W-ClearPass as an RFC 3576 (CoA) Server
- Adding an SSID to the Mobility Controller for 802.1X Authentication

Adding a Mobility Controller to W-ClearPass Policy Manager

This section describes how to add a mobility controller to W-ClearPass Policy Manager.

This section contains the following information:

- Defining a New Mobility Controller
- Importing a List of Network Devices
- Generating an Example of Import File XML Format

Defining a New Mobility Controller

The mobility controller is responsible for managing access to the Wireless LAN.



You can use this procedure to add any network device from any vendor that supports RADIUS or TACACS+ to W-ClearPass Policy Manager.

To define a new mobility controller in W-ClearPass:

1. In W-ClearPass Policy Manager, navigate to **Configuration** > **Network** > **Devices**.

The Network Devices screen opens:

ClearPas	s Policy Manager	<u>Support</u> admin	<u>Help</u> <u>Logout</u> (Super Administrator)
Configuration » Network » Devices Network Devices			🚽 Add 😤 Import 😩 Export All
Filter: Name	ontains 🔻	+ Go Clear Filter	Show 10 💌 records
# Name ∆	IP or Subnet Address	Description	
		Co	ppy Export Delete

2. Click **Add**.

The Add Device wizard appears:

You can also import a list of devices from a file. For details, see Importing a List of Network Devices.

Figure 60 Add Device Wizard: Device Tab

dd Device	
Device SNMP Read S	Settings SNMP Write Settings CLI Settings
Name:	
IP or Subnet Address:	(e.g., 192.168.1.10 or 192.168.1.1/24 or 192.168.1.1-20)
Description:	
RADIUS Shared Secret:	Verify:
TACACS+ Shared Secret:	Verify:
Vendor Name:	Aruba
Enable RADIUS CoA:	RADIUS COA Port: 3799
Attributes	
Attribute	Value

3. Populate the **Network Device** parameters as described in <u>Table 9</u>:

Table 9: Defining a Mobility Controller

Parameter	Action/Description
Name	1. Enter the name of the Mobility Controller.
IP or Subnet Address	2. Enter the IP address or subnet address of the Mobility Controller.

Parameter	Action/Description			
Description	Dell recommends including a description of the device.			
RADIUS Shared Secret	 Specify the RADIUS Shared Secret for the current W-ClearPass Policy Manager server. NOTE: Make sure that the value of the Key parameter for the RADIUS server configured on the mobility controller is identical to the RADIUS Shared Secret you specify here for the current Policy Manager server (see <u>Table 10</u>). 			
TACACS Shared Secret	If you're adding a device because you want W-ClearPass to manage access to that device with TACACS+, specify the TACACS+ Shared Secret.			
Enable RADIUS CoA	 To enable RADIUS-initiated Change of Authorization (CoA) on the mobility controller, select the check box for this parameter. This parameter is enabled by default. 			
RADIUS CoA Port	If RADIUS CoA is enabled, this specifies the default port 3799 . Change this value only if you defined a custom port on the mobility controller. For related information, see <u>Configuring W-ClearPass as an RFC 3576 (CoA) Server</u> .			

5. Click Add.

You return to the **Network Devices** page. The new mobility controller is now present in the list of network devices.

Importing a List of Network Devices

To import a list of network devices from a file:



The import file must be in XML format. See the next section for an example of the import file XML format.

- In W-ClearPass Policy Manager, navigate to Configuration > Network > Devices. The Network Devices page opens.
- 2. From the Network Devices page, click Import, then click Import from file.

The **Import from File** dialog opens.

- 2. To browse to the file, click **Browse**.
- Enter the shared secret if required, then click Import.
 The list of network devices is imported into W-ClearPass.

Generating an Example of Import File XML Format

To generate an example of the import file XML format:

1. From the **Network Devices** dialog, click **Add**.

The Add Device dialog opens.

2. In the **Device** tab, define your network device, then click **Add**.

You return to the Network Devices dialog, where the new device is listed.

3. Click **Export All**.

The Export to File dialog opens.

Figure 61 Export to File Dialog

		8
🔘 Yes	No	
		Export Close
	O Yes	O Yes O No

- 4. In the Export to file dialog, select No to the Export file with password protection field, then click Export.
- 5. Download the XMLfile.
- 6. Open the XML file in a text editor to view the format (see).

Figure 62 Example of the Import File XML Format

Adding a W-ClearPass/RADIUS Server to the Mobility Controller

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager server is a RADIUS server. You must add a W-ClearPass/RADIUS server to the mobility controller because doing so allows W-ClearPass to be integrated with the mobility controller and the wireless LAN authentication process.

By adding the W-ClearPass/RADIUS server to the mobility controller, you are configuring the mobility controller to send authentication requests to the W-ClearPass/RADIUS server.

To define the W-ClearPass/RADIUS server in the mobility controller so that it can be used for any RADIUS authentication task:

- 1. Log in to the Mobility Controller.
- 2. Select the **Configuration** tab.
- 3. In the left navigation pane, select **SECURITY > Authentication**.

The Security > Authentication > Servers screen opens.

4. Choose RADIUS Server.

The action list of existing RADIUS servers is displayed.

5. To add a RADIUS server, enter the name of the new RADIUS server in the **Add** text box (at the bottom of the screen), then click **Add**.

Figure 63 Defining the RADIUS Server in the Mobility Controller

Serve	ers	AAA Profiles	L2 Authentication	L3 Authentication	User Rules	Advanced	
+	Server (Group	RADIUS Server				
	RADIUS	Server	Ins ClearPass1	Add		Actions	
÷	LDAP Se	rver					
+	Internal	DB					
Ŧ	Tacacs / Server	Accounting					

Security > Authentication > Servers

The new server is added to the **RADIUS Server** list.

6. Click the name of the new RADIUS server.

The **RADIUS Server** configuration screen opens.

Figure 64 Configuring the RADIUS Server

Host	10.100.0.1		
	••••••		
Key	Retype:		
	••••••		
	cppm_username testTech		
CPPM credentials	•••••		
	cppm_password Retype:		
	•••••		
Auth Port	1812		
Acct Port	1813		
Radsec Port	2083		
Retransmits	3		
Timeout	5 sec		
NAS ID			
NAS IP			
Enable IPv6			
NAS IPv6			
	vlanid		
Source Interface	ipv6addr		
Use MD5			
Use IP address for calling station ID			
Mode			
Lowercase MAC addresses			
MAC address delimiter	none 🔻		
Service-type of FRAMED-USER			
Radsec			
Radsec Trusted CA Name			
Radsec Server Cert Name			
Radsec Client Cert			

7. Specify the values for the RADIUS server configuration parameters as described in <u>Table 10</u>.

RADIUS Server Parameter	Action/Description	Comments
Host	 Specify the IP address or the fully qualified domain name of the RADIUS server. NOTE: In this case, specify the IP address of the W-ClearPass server, which is a RADIUS server. 	When you first add the RADIUS server, the mobility controller populates the Host field with a dummy IP address—127.0.0.1.
Кеу	 Enter the RADIUS shared secret that is configured on the authentication server (in this case, the W-ClearPass server). NOTE: The RADIUS Key value on the controller and the RADIUS Shared Secret on the W- ClearPass server must be identical. 	The maximum length is 128 characters.
CPPM credentials	3. Enter the W-ClearPass server credentials if you want the mobility controller to use a configurable username and password instead of a support password.	
Auth Port	4. Specify the authentication port on the RADIUS server.	Range: 1 to 65535Default: 1812
Acct Port	5. Specify the accounting port on the RADIUS server.	Range: 1 to 65535Default: 1813
Radsec Port	6. Specify the Radsec (Secure RADIUS Service) port number of this server.	Range: 1 to 65535Default: 2083
Retransmits <number></number>	7. Enter the maximum number of retries sent to the server by the mobility controller before the server is marked as down.	Range: 0 to 3Default: 3
Timeout < <i>seconds</i> >	8. Enter the maximum time, in seconds, that the mobility controller waits before timing out the request and resending it.	Range: 0 to 30Default: 5
NAS ID	Optional: Enter the Network Access Server (NAS) identifier to use in RADIUS packets. The NAS in this case is the Mobility Controller.	The NAS ID should be unique to the controller within the scope of the RADIUS server. For example, a fully qualified domain name is suitable as a NAS ID.

Table 10	: Configuring	RADIUS Server	Parameters	on the	Mobility	Controller
----------	---------------	----------------------	------------	--------	----------	------------

RADIUS Server Parameter	Action/Description	Comments
NAS IP	 9. Specify the NAS IP address to send in RADIUS packets. To set the global NAS IP address, enter the following command: ip radius nas-ip <ip_addr></ip_addr> 	You can configure a global NAS IP address that the mobility controller uses for communications with all RADIUS servers. If you do not configure a server-specific NAS IP address, the global NAS IP address is used.
Enable IPv6	To enable the operation of the RADIUS server over IPv6, check the Enable IPv6 check box.	Enabling IPv6 also enables the RADIUS attributes used to support IPv6 network access.
Source Interface	 10. Enter a VLAN number ID. This allows you to use source IP addresses to differentiate RADIUS requests. VLAN ID: Specify vlanid for the source interface when the RADIUS packets are sent to the RADIUS server via IPv4. IPv6 address: Specify ivpv6addr for the source interface when the RADIUS packets are sent to the RADIUS/W-ClearPass Policy Manager server via IPv6. NOTE: A VLAN interface can have multiple IPv6 addresses, which is why it isn't sufficient to specify the VLAN ID for RADIUS over IPv6. 	 This option associates a VLAN interface with the RADIUS server to allow the server-specific source interface to override the global configuration. This option defines the source IP address in the RADIUS requests. If you associate a Source Interface (by entering a VLAN number) with a configured server, then the source IP address of the packet is that interface's IP address. If you do not associate the Source Interface with a configured server (by leaving the field blank), the IP address of the global Source Interface is used.
Use MD5	11. Enable this option to use an MD5 hash instead of a clear text password.	This option is disabled by default.
Use IP address for calling station ID	12. Enable this option if you choose to use an IP address instead of a MAC address for calling station IDs.	This option is disabled by default.
Mode	13. Enable this option if you want to enable the RADIUS server.	The Mode parameter defines whether the controller should or should not send RADIUS requests to the RADIUS/W-ClearPass server. This option is enabled by default.
Lowercase MAC address	Sends the MAC address in lowercase in the authentication and accounting requests to this server.	Default: Disabled

RADIUS Server Parameter	Action/Description	Comments	
MAC address delimiter	 14. Optionally, specify a MAC address delimiter. Sends the MAC address with the following delimiters in the authentication and accounting requests of this server: colon: Send MAC address as: XX:XX:XX:XX:XXXXX dash: Send MAC address as: XX-XX-XX-XX- XX-XX none: Send MAC address as: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Default: None	
Service-type of FRAMED-USER	15. Enable this option to send the service-type as FRAMED-USER instead of LOGIN-USER .	Default: Disabled	
Radsec	16. Enable or disable RADIUS over TLS (Secure RADIUS Service) for this server.	Default: Disabled	
Radsec Trusted CA Name	17. Enter the trusted Certificate Authority (CA) name to be used to verify this server.		
Radsec Server Cert Name	18. Enter the name of the trusted Radsec server certificate.		
Radsec Client Cert	19. Enter the name of the Radsec client certificate that the mobility controller should use for Radsec requests.		
called-station-id	 20. Specify the MAC address of the mobility controller. This parameter allows you to send different values for Called Station ID. Configure the following parameters for Called Station ID: csid_type: Called station ID type. Default: macaddr include_ssid: Enabling this option includes the SSID in the Called Station ID along with csid_type. Default: Disabled csid_delimiter: Enabling this option allows you to send this delimiter to separate csid_type and ssid in the Called Station ID. Default: colon 		
	(Example: 00-1a-1e-00-1a-b8 : dotx-ssid) 21. When finished, click Apply .	The message <i>"Configuration Updated successfully"</i> is displayed.	
Adding the W-ClearPass/RADIUS Server to a Server Group

Before you can reference the W-ClearPass/RADIUS server in the configuration, you must add the W-ClearPass/RADIUS server to a server group.

• You can add multiple RADIUS servers in a server group. You can configure the same server in more than one server group. Note that you must configure a server before you can include it in a server group. Server names must be unique.



Even if there is only one RADIUS server, you must add it to a RADIUS server group.

- You can create groups of RADIUS servers for specific types of authentication—for example, you can specify one or more RADIUS servers to be used for 802.1x authentication.
- You can also configure servers of different types in one server group. For example, you can include the internal database as a backup to a RADIUS server.

To add the W-ClearPass/RADIUS server to a server group:

- 1. On the mobility controller, select the **Configuration** tab.
- In the navigation pane, select SECURITY > Authentication.
 The Authentication > Servers screen opens.
- From the list of server types on the left side of the screen, select Server Group. The Server Group page opens.

Figure 65 Server Group Page

Configuration	Diagnostics	Maintenance	Save Configuration	2			
Security > Authe	ecurity > Authentication > Servers						
Servers AAA Profiles L2 Authentication L3 Authentication User Rules Advanced							
 Server Group 		Server Grou	ıp				
default		Instance	Servers ou	it of Service		Actions	
internal		default			Sho	w Reference	Delete
interna		internal			Sho	w Reference	Delete
RADIUS Server		ClearPassGrou	up1 Add				
LDAP Server							

- 4. To add a server group, enter the name of the server group in the **Add** field, then click **Add**. The new server group you defined is now included in the **Server Group** list.
- To configure the server group, click the name of the new server group. The configuration screen for the selected server group opens.



Server Group > ClearPa	ssGroup1		[Show Reference	Save	As Reset
Fail Through						
Load Balance						
Servers						
Name	Server-1	Туре	tri	m-FQDN	Mate	h-Rule
New 🔺 🔻	Delete					
Server Rules						
Priority Attribute	Operation	Operand	Туре	Action	Value	Validated
New 🔺 🔻	Delete					

- To add a W-ClearPass Policy Manager server to the server group, in the Servers section, click New. The Servers configuration screen opens.
- 7. To choose the W-ClearPass server for inclusion in the RADIUS server group, select the W-ClearPass (RADIUS) server name from the drop-down list (see Figure 67).

Figure 67 Selecting the W-ClearPass Server for Inclusion in the RADIUS Server Group

Server Group > ClearPassGro	oup1				Show	Refer	ence Sav	e As Reset
Fail Through								
Load Balance								
Servers								
Name Server Name	Server-1 Trim FQDN	Гуре		trim-f	FQDN Match R	ules	Matc	h-Rule
Internal (Local) Internal (Local) ClearPass1 (Radius)		Match Type Authstring Add Rule	•	Operator contains Delete	v ▼ Rule	Match	String	
Server Rules		ļ					Add Serve	er Cancel
Priority Attribute New A V Delet	Operation	Operand	т	уре	Action	1	Value	Validated

The new RADIUS server name is now displayed in the Server Name list.

8. If necessary, modify the **Servers** settings as needed, then click **Add Server**.

You return to the **Server Group** configuration screen. The W-ClearPass Policy Manager server is now included in the RADIUS server group.

Server Group > C	learPassGro	up1			Show Ref	ference Sav	re As Reset
Fail Through							
Load Balance							
Servers							
Nam	e	Server	-Type	trim-	FQDN	Match	n-Rule
ClearPass1 New	v Delet	Radius		No			
Server Rules							
			-	_			
Priority	Attribute	Operation	Operand	Туре	Action	Value	Validated

9. Click **Apply**, then from the top of the screen, click **Save Configuration**.

You have now defined the W-ClearPass server as a RADIUS server, and the RADIUS server is a member of a RADIUS server group. These tasks are required before you can use the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server as a RADIUS server in the network.

Using the CLI

To use the CLI to add a server to a server group:

```
(Controller-1)(config) #aaa server-group <name>
  auth-server <name>
```

Configuring an AAA Profile for 802.1X Authentication

The AAA profile configures the authentication for a Wireless LAN. The AAA profile defines the type of authentication (in this example, 802.1x), the authentication server group, and the default user role for authenticated users.



Be sure to assign a unique name to each virtual AP, SSID, and AAA profile that you modify.

With the RADIUS server and RADIUS server group configured, you can now configure an AAA profile that will refer to that server group, which, in turn, refers to a server in that server group.

To configure an AAA profile:

 On the mobility controller, navigate to Configuration > SECURITY > Authentication > AAA Profiles tab. The AAA Profiles Summary is displayed.

Figure 69 AAA Profiles Summary

Serve	rs AAA Profile	L2 Authent	ication L3 Auth	entication	User Rules	Advanced			
E A	IAA	AAA Profiles	Summary						_
+	bssidreorder	Name	Role	MAC Auth.	802.1x Auth.	RADIUS Acct.	XML-API Auth.	RFC 3576 Auth.	Actions
÷	default	bssidreorder	logon		default-psk				Show Reference Delete
+	default-dot1x default-	default	logon						Show Reference Delete
÷	default- mac-auth	default-dot1x	logon		default				Show Reference Delete
÷	default-open	default- dot1x-psk	logon		default-psk				Show Reference Delete

- 2. To add a new AAA profile, scroll to the bottom of the screen and click Add.
- 3. Enter the name of the AAA profile in the **Add** text box, then click **Add**.
- 4. Scroll to the name of the new AAA profile and click the profile name.

The AAA Profiles configuration page opens, with the list of existing AAA profiles displayed on the left.

5. Expand the menu to view the desired AAA profile, then select the profile.

The AAA Profile Configuration page opens.

Figure 70 AAA Profile Configuration Page

Configuration	Diagnostics	s M	Maintenance Save Configuration			
Security > Aut	security > Authentication > Profiles					
Servers AA	Servers AAA Profiles L2 Authentication L3 Authentication User Rules Advanced					
	Pass≜∆∆Profile		AAA Profile > ClearPassAAAProfile Show Reference Save As Reset			
MA	C		Initial role logon 🔻			
Aut	thentication		MAC Authentication Default Role guest 🔹			
MA	C thentication		802.1X Authentication Default Role guest 🔻			
Ser	ver Group defau	lt	Download Role from CPPM			
802 Aut	802.1X Authentication 802.1X Authentication Server Group RADIUS		L2 Authentication Fail Through			
802			Multiple Server Accounting			
Aut Ser RA			User idle timeout Enable seconds			
Ser	ver Group		Max IPv4 for wireless user 2			
+ XM	L API server		RADIUS Interim Accounting			
± RF	C 3576 server		User derivation rulesNONE			
🛨 david	+ david		Wired to Wireless Roaming			
🛨 david	+ davidtest-aaa_prof		SIP authentication roleNONE			
🛨 defau	ılt		Device Type Classification			
🛨 defau	lt-dot1x		Enforce DHCP			
🛨 defau	ult-dot1x-psk		PAN Firewall Integration			
			Open SSID radius accounting			

6. Configure the AAA profile parameters according to your particular use case (refer to <u>Table 11</u> below for AAA profile parameter details).

AAA Profile Parameter	Action/Description	Comments
Initial role	1. Click the Initial Role drop-down list and select a role for unauthenticated users.	The default role for unauthenticated users is logon .
MAC Authentication Default Role	2. Click the MAC Authentication Default Role drop-down list and select the role assigned to the user when the device is MAC authenticated.	The default role for MAC authentication is the guest user role. If derivation rules are present, the role assigned to the client through these rules takes precedence over the default role. NOTE: This feature requires a Policy Enforcement Firewall Next Generation (PEFNG) license.
Download Role from CPPM	 Enable the Download Role from CPPM option. When you enable this option, the configured ClearPass/RADIUS server provides the role name at user authentication. 	The authenticator controller can request the role details if the role does not exist. Users are then assigned to the newly- defined role.
Layer-2 Authentication Fail Through	 4. Enable this option to enable the L2-authentication-failthrough mode. When this option is enabled, the 802.1X authentication is allowed even if MAC authentication fails. If this option is disabled, 802.1X authentication is not allowed. 	L2-authentication-failthrough mode is disabled by default.
User idle timeout	 Select the Enable check box to configure the user idle timeout value for this AAA profile. a. Specify the idle timeout value for the client in the number of seconds. 	 Enabling this option overrides the global settings configured in the AAA timers. If this is disabled, the global settings are applied. Range: 30 to 15300 in multiples of 30 seconds. A value of 0 deletes the user immediately after disassociation from the wireless network.
Max IPv4 for wireless user	 Specify the number of IPv4 addresses that can be associated to a wireless user. Inter-controller mobility does not support more than two IP addresses per wireless user. 	 Minimum: 1 Maximum: 32 Default: 2

Table 11: Configuring AAA Profile Parameters

AAA Profile Parameter	Action/Description	Comments
	Upon configuration, the following warning is is issued:	
	Warning: Increased max-IP limit can keep system from scaling to max users on all master and local controllers.	
RADIUS Interim Accounting	7. Enable this option to allow the mobility controller to send Interim-Update messages with current user statistics to the RADIUS accounting server at regular intervals.	This option is disabled by default, allowing the mobility controller to send only start and stop messages to the RADIUS accounting server.
User derivation rules	8. Click the User derivation rules drop-down list to specify a user attribute profile from which the user role or VLAN is derived.	
Wired to Wireless Roaming	9. Enable this feature to keep users authenticated when they roam from the wired side of the network.	This feature is enabled by default.
SIP authentication role	10. To specify the role assigned to a Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) client upon registration, click the SIP authentication role drop-down list.	NOTE: This feature requires a Policy Enforcement Firewall Next Generation (PEFNG) license.
Device Type Classification	11. Enable this option to configure the mobility controller to parse user-agent strings and identify the type of device connecting to the access point.	When the device type classification is enabled, the Global Clients table shown in the Monitoring > Network > All WLAN Clients window shows each client's device type (if the client device can be identified).
Enforce DHCP	 12. Enable this option when you create a user rule that assigns a specific role or VLAN based upon the client device's type. NOTE: If a client is removed from the user table by the "Logon user lifetime" AAA timer, that client will not be able to send traffic until it renews the DHCP lease. 	When you select this option, clients must obtain an IP address using the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) before they are allowed to associate to an access point.
PAN Firewalls Integration	13. Enable this option to require mapping the IP addresses of Palo Alto Networks firewalls.	

AAA Profile Parameter	Action/Description	Comments
Open SSID RADIUS Accounting	14. Enable this option to have a Network Access Server (NAS) operate as a client of the RADIUS accounting server.The client is responsible for passing user accounting information to a designated RADIUS accounting server.	The RADIUS accounting server can act as a proxy client to other kinds of accounting servers. Transactions between the client and the RADIUS accounting server are authenticated through the use of a shared secret, which is never sent over the network.
	15. When you are finished with the AAA profile settings, click Apply .	

This completes the AAA profile configuration for 802.1X authentication.

Configuring a Virtual AP Profile

This section contains the following information:

- About Virtual AP Profiles
- Configuring the Virtual AP Profile

About Virtual AP Profiles

Access points (APs) advertise Wireless LANs to wireless clients by sending out beacons and probing responses that contain the Wireless LAN's SSID and the supported authentication and data rates. When a wireless client associates to an AP, it sends traffic to the AP's Basic Service Set Identifier (BSSID), which is usually the AP's MAC address.

In a Dell network, an AP uses a unique BSSID for each Wireless LAN. Thus, a physical AP can support multiple WLANs. The WLAN configuration applied to a BSSID on an AP is called a *virtual AP*.

You can configure and apply multiple virtual APs to an AP group or to an individual AP by defining one or more *virtual AP profiles*. You can configure virtual AP profiles to provide different network access or services to users on the same physical network.

- For example, you can configure a Wireless LAN to provide access to guest users and another WLAN to provide access to employee users through the same APs.
- You can also configure a Wireless LAN that offers open authentication and Captive Portal access with data rates of 1 MBps and 2 MBps, and another Wireless LAN that requires Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) authentication with data rates of up to 11 MBps.

Example

As an example, suppose there are users in both Edmonton and Toronto that access the same "Corpnet" Wireless LAN.

If the Wireless LAN required authentication to an external server, users who associate with the APs in Toronto would want to authenticate with their local servers.

In this case, you can configure two virtual APs that each reference a slightly different AAA profile—one AAA profile that references authentication servers in Edmonton and the other AAA profile that references servers in Toronto (see <u>Table 12</u>).

When you create a Wireless LAN using the mobility controller's WLAN wizard, the mobility controller automatically creates a Virtual AP profile (VAP) based on the Wireless LAN's configuration.



The name the mobility controller assigns to the VAP is the name of the WLAN with "-vap_prof" appended to the name. For example, the VAP for a Wireless LAN named "802.1X-CP" would be named "802.1X-CP-vap_prof."

Table 12: Applying WLAN Profiles to AP Groups

WLAN Profiles	Default AP Group	Toronto AP Group
Virtual AP	Corpnet-Ed	Corpnet-Tr
SSID	Corpnet	Corpnet
ААА	Ed-Servers	Tr-Servers

You can apply multiple virtual AP profiles to individual APs. You can also apply the same virtual AP profile to one or more AP groups.

Configuring the Virtual AP Profile

To configure the Virtual AP profile:

- 1. On the mobility controller, navigate to **Configuration** > **ADVANCED SERVICES** > **All Profiles**.
- 2. Expand the Wireless LAN profile and select Virtual AP.
 - The list of existing Virtual AP profiles appears in the **Profile Details** pane.
- 3. Scroll to the Virtual AP profile based on the Wireless LAN you created, then select it.
 - To configure an existing Virtual AP profile, select the name of the profile in the **Profile Details** pane.
 - To create a new Virtual AP profile:
 - a) Enter a name for the profile in the entry field at the bottom of the **Profile Details** pane, then click **Add**.

b) Select the name of the profile in the **Profile Details** pane.



Whenever you create a new virtual AP profile in the WebUI, the profile automatically contains the "default" SSID profile with the default "Dell-ap" ESSID. You must configure a new ESSID and SSID profile for the virtual AP profile before you apply the profile (for related information, see <u>Adding an SSID to the Mobility Controller for 802.1X</u> <u>Authentication on page 85</u>).

The Virtual AP Profile configuration screen appears.



Profi	Profile Details				
Virtual AP profile > wlan1-vap_prof	Show Reference Save As Reset				
Basic Advanced					
General					
Virtual AP enable					
VLAN	10 💿				
Forward mode	tunnel 🔻				
RF					
Allowed band	all 🔻				
Band Steering					
Steering Mode	prefer-5ghz 🔻				
Broadcast/Multicast					
Dynamic Multicast Optimization (DMO)					
Drop Broadcast and Unknown Multicast					
Convert Broadcast ARP requests to unicast	\checkmark				

The list of profiles on the left of <u>Figure 71</u> shows all the settings associated with the selected virtual AP profile—**AAA profile** (which contains the RADIUS information), **802.11K**, and **SSID** settings.

4. Configure the profile parameters described in <u>Table 13</u>.

The virtual AP profile is divided into two tabs:

- Basic: Displays only those configuration settings that often need to be adjusted to suit a specific network.
- **Advanced**: Shows all configuration settings, including settings that do not need frequent adjustment or should be kept at their default values.

For details on the advanced virtual AP profile parameters, refer to the *ArubaOS User Guide* > *Virtual APs* chapter > *Table: "Virtual AP Profile Parameters."*



If you change a setting on one tab, then click and display the other tab without saving your changed configuration, that changed setting reverts to its previous value.

Table 13: Basic Virtual AP Profile Parameters

VAP Parameter	Action/Description
General	
Virtual AP enable	1. Select the Virtual AP enable check box to enable or disable the virtual AP. This feature is enabled by default.
VLAN	2. Specify the VLAN(s) into which users are placed in order to obtain an IP address.

VAP Parameter	Action/Description
	To associate that VLAN with the virtual AP profile: a. Click the drop-down list to select a configured VLAN.
	b. Click the Arrow button.
	The Forward mode parameter controls whether data is tunneled to the mobility controller using generic routing encapsulation (GRE), bridged into the local Ethernet LAN (for remote APs), or a combination thereof depending on the destination—corporate traffic goes to the mobility controller, and Internet access remains local.
	All forwarding modes support band steering, Traffic Specification (TSPEC) and Traffic Classification (TCLAS) enforcement, 802.11k, and station blacklisting.
	3. Click the drop-down list to select one of the following forward modes:
	• Tunnel : The AP handles all 802.11 association requests and responses, but it sends all 802.11 data packets, action frames, and Extensible Authentication Protocol Over LAN (EAPOL) frames over a GRE tunnel to the mobility controller for processing. You can configure both remote and campus APs in tunnel mode.
Forward mode	• Bridge : 802.11 frames are bridged into the local Ethernet LAN. Both remote and campus APs can be configured in Bridge mode. You must enable the control plane security feature on the mobility controller before you configure campus APs in bridge mode.
	 Split-Tunnel: 802.11 frames are either tunneled or bridged, depending on the destination.
	NOTE: Decrypt-Tunnel : Both remote and campus APs can be configured in decrypt- tunnel mode. When an AP uses decrypt-tunnel forwarding mode, that AP decrypts and decapsulates all 802.11 frames from a client and sends the 802.3 frames through the GRE tunnel to the mobility controller, which then applies firewall policies to the user traffic. NOTE: Before you configure campus APs in decrypt-tunnel forward mode, you must
	enable the Control Plane Security feature on the mobility controller.
RF	
	4. Specify the band on which to use the virtual AP:
	• a —802.11a band only (5 GHz)
Allowed band	• g —802.11b/g band only (2.4 GHz)
	 all—Both 802.11a and 802.11b/g bands (5 GHz and 2.4 GHz) The default band setting is all.
Band Steering	5. Enable the Band Steering parameter to reduce co-channel interference and increase available bandwidth for dual-band clients (because there are more channels on the 5GHz band than on the 2.4GHz band).
	• This feature supports both campus APs and remote APs that have a virtual AP profile set to tunnel, split-tunnel, or bridge forwarding mode.
	• This feature is disabled by default, and must be enabled in a virtual AP profile.
Steering Mode	6. Specify the Band Steering mode:
	• Force-5GHz: When the AP is configured in force-5GHz band steering mode, the

VAP Parameter	Action/Description
	 AP tries to force 5Ghz-capable APs to use that radio band. Prefer-5GHz (Default): If you configure the AP to use Prefer-5GHz band steering mode, the AP tries to steer the client to the 5G band (if the client is 5G capable), but the AP lets the client connect on the 2.4G band if the client persists in 2.4G association attempts. Balance-bands: The AP balances the clients across the two radios to best utilize the available 2.4G bandwidth.
Broadcast/Multicast	
Dynamic Multicast Optimization (DMO)	7. Select this check box to enable Dynamic Multicast Optimization . This parameter is disabled by default, and cannot be enabled without the Policy Enforcement Firewall Next Generation (PEFNG) license.
Drop Broadcast and Multicast	 8. Select the Drop Broadcast and Multicast check box to filter out broadcast and multicast traffic in the air. NOTE: Do not enable this option for virtual APs configured in bridge-forwarding mode. This configuration parameter is to be used only for virtual APs in tunnel mode. In tunnel mode, all packets travel to the controller, so the controller is able to drop all broadcast traffic. When a virtual AP is configured to use bridge-forwarding mode, most data traffic stays local to the AP, and the controller is not able to filter out that broadcast traffic. IMPORTANT: If you enable this option, you must also enable the Broadcast-Filter ARP parameter on the virtual AP profile to prevent ARP requests from being dropped. You can enable this parameter by checking the Convert Broadcast ARP requests to unicast check box as described in the following parameter (Convert Broadcast ARP requests to unicast).
Convert Broadcast ARP requests to unicast	 9. Enable this option to convert all broadcast ARP requests to unicast and sent directly to the client. You can check the status of this option using the show ap active and the show datapath tunnel commands. The output displays the letter a in the Flags column. The Convert Broadcast ARP requests to unicast option includes the additional functionality of a broadcast-filter all parameter, where DHCP response frames are sent as unicast to the corresponding client. NOTE: This option, when enabled, can impact DHCP discover packets, requested packets for clients that are behind a wireless bridge, and virtual clients on VMware devices. To resolve this issue and allow clients that are behind a wireless bridge or VMware devices to receive an IP address, disable this option. This parameter is enabled by default.
	10. When finished specifying the Virtual AP profile settings, click Apply

This completes the configuration for the Virtual AP Profile.

Configuring W-ClearPass as an RFC 3576 (CoA) Server

This section contains the following information:

• About the CoA Server

- <u>Configuring the W-ClearPass Server as a CoA Server</u>
- Using the CLI

About the CoA Server

This section describes how to configure the W-ClearPass server as a CoA (Change of Authorization) server.

You can configure a RADIUS server to send user disconnect, change of authorization (CoA), and session timeout messages as described in RFC 3576, "Dynamic Authorization Extensions to Remote Dial In User Service (RADIUS)."

The disconnect, session timeout, and change of authorization messages sent from the server to the mobility controller contain information to identify the user for whom the message is sent.

The mobility controller supports the following attributes for identifying the users who authenticate with an RFC 3576 server:

- **user-name**: Name of the user to be authenticated.
- framed-ip-address: User's IP address.
- calling-station-id: Phone number of a station that originated a call.
- accounting-session-id: Unique accounting ID for the user session.

If the authentication server sends both supported and unsupported attributes to the mobility controller, the unknown or unsupported attributes are ignored.

If no matching user is found, the mobility controller sends a *503: Session Not Found* error message back to the RFC 3576 server.

Configuring the W-ClearPass Server as a CoA Server

To configure the W-ClearPass server as a CoA server:



Before you configure any server as a CoA server, RADIUS CoA must be enabled on the device (for details, see <u>Adding</u> a Mobility Controller to W-ClearPass Policy Manager).

1. On the mobility controller, navigate to **Configuration** > **SECURITY** > **Authentication**.

The Servers tab is displayed by default.

- 2. To display the list of RFC 3576 servers, select RFC 3576 Server.
- 3. If the W-ClearPass server's IP address is not already listed in the list of RFC 3576 servers, enter the IP address of the W-ClearPass server in the **Add** text box, then click **Add**.

Figure 72 Adding an RFC 3576 Server

RFC 3576 Server	
Instance	Actions
10.10.110.20 Add	

The IP address of the W-ClearPass server is displayed in the list of RFC 3576 servers.

4. To configure the server parameters, click the name (which is the IP address) of the newly created RFC 3576 server.

The following dialog appears.



RFC 3576 Server > 10.162.114.23	Show Reference Save As Reset
Kev	Retype:
	•••••
Radsec	

- 5. Specify the parameters for the RFC 3576 server.
 - a. **Key** parameter: Enter and verify the RADIUS shared key.

This key value is the same RADIUS key value configured for the mobility controller.



To enable communication between the mobility controller and the W-ClearPass server, the values for RADIUS key configured on the mobility controller and the RADIUS shared secret configured on the W-ClearPass server must be identical.

- b. Radsec check box: Enable or disable RADIUS over TLS for this server.
- 6. When finished, click **Apply**.

The following message is displayed: *Configuration Updated successfully*. The new RFC 3576 server is listed on the Servers list.

Using the CLI

Use the following commands to configure an RFC 3576 server using the CLI:

```
aaa rfc-3576-server <server_IP_address>
key <string>
```

For example:

(controller) (config) #aaa rfc-3576-server 10.100.8.32 (controller) (RFC 3576 Server "10.100.8.32") #key employee123

Adding an SSID to the Mobility Controller for 802.1X Authentication

This section describes how to create and configure a Service Set Identifier (SSID) to the mobility controller for 802.1X authentication.

This section contains the following information:

- SSID Profile Overview
- Adding an SSID to the Mobility Controller

SSID Profile Overview

An SSID (Service Set Identifier) is the name of the network or Wireless LAN that clients see. An SSID profile defines the name of the network, authentication type for the network, basic rates, transmit rates, SSID cloaking, and certain wireless multimedia settings for the network.

ArubaOS supports different types of the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES), Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), and wired equivalent privacy (WEP) encryption. AES is the most secure and the recommended encryption method.

Most modern devices are AES capable, and therefore AES should be the default encryption method. Use TKIP only when the network includes devices that do not support AES. In these situations, use a separate SSID for devices that are only capable of TKIP.

Adding an SSID to the Mobility Controller

This section assumes that the mobility controller's basic configuration has been completed as described in the previous sections of this chapter, and that the access points (APs) have been provisioned.

To add an SSID for 802.1X authentication:

1. On the mobility controller, navigate to **Configuration** > **WIZARDS** > **Campus WLAN**.

The Configure WLAN wizard opens.

Figure 74 Specifying the Wireless LAN

Da	ashboard	Monitoring	Configuration	Diagnostics	Maintenance	Save Configuration	n		
Со	nfigure \	VLAN							
	Workflow	0 +	Help						
1	WLAN			Specify V	/ireless LAI	N (WLAN)			
				Specify the V	VLAN to edit. <u>Mo</u>	<u>re</u>			
	Forward	ling Mode		AP Groups		WLANs for default		WLAN Usage	
				ALL AP GRO ap-3600 default	UPS	aruba-ap	*		
	Radio &	VLAN		MasterContr	oller1				
					T		Ŧ		
	Interna	l/Guest		New		New Copy Del	ete	Share	
				Select a WLA	N to edit				

- 2. From the **AP Groups** pane, select the appropriate AP group, or click **New** to create a new AP group.
- 3. From the **WLANs for** <*name*> pane, select the Wireless LAN you wish to use, or click **New** to create a new Wireless LAN.
- 4. In the Create New WLAN Named dialog, enter the name of the new Wireless LAN.



Specify Wireless	5 L/ dit. <u>N</u>	AN (WLAN)		
AP Groups		WLANs for default		WLAN Usage
ALL AP GROUPS ap-3600 default MasterController1	*	aruba-ap	*	
New Select a WLAN to edit		New Copy De Create new WLAN r dot1X_CP OK Cance	lete amed:	Share

5. To proceed, press OK.

The new Wireless LAN is added to the list of Wireless LANs. Note that the **New**, **Copy**, **Delete**, and **Share** buttons are now enabled.

6. To begin configuration for the new Wireless LAN, press **Next**.

The **Specify Forwarding Mode** configuration screen opens.

Figure 76 Specifying Forwarding Mode



7. Click **Next**.

The Radio Type and VLAN configuration screen appears.

Specify Radio	o Type and VLAN for dot1X_CP in Group default
Specify the radio t default. Note: you	type on which this WLAN is available, as well as the VLAN in which users connecting to this WLAN are to be placed by can override the VLAN specified below by configuring per-role VLANs in Step 8. <u>More</u>
Radio Type:	a+n ▼
Broadcast SSID:	Yes 🔻
VLAN:	0

- 8. Enter the values to specify the radio type and VLAN, then click **Next**.
 - a. **Radio Type**: This allows you to specify which radio frequencies the SSID will broadcast on.

The **a+n** radio type is selected in this example because this radio type specifies the 5 GHz spectrum, which has more bandwidth than the 2.4 GHz spectrum.

- b. Broadcast SSID: Indicate by Yes or No whether you want to broadcast this SSID.
- c. VLAN: Choose the VLAN that the user will be assigned to after a successful authentication.

VLAN IDs are suggested from the drop-down list of currently configured VLANs. You can select multiple VLANs by separating them with commas.

The **Specify Usage Scenario** configuration screen opens.





This screen specifies whether this Wireless LAN is for guest usage (and therefore, captive portal authentication), or for Internal usage (802.1X authentication).

9. Specify Internal (the default setting), then click Next.

The Specify Authentication and Encryption configuration screen appears.

The authentication and encryption options below are grouped by the level of security they guarantee. More
More Secure Strong encryption with 802.1x authentication. Strong encryption with shared-key authentication. Weak encryption, with optional authentication. Open - no authentication or encryption.
Less Secure
Authentication: WPA-2 Enterprise WPA Enterprise Encryption: aes

10. For this step, do the following:

- a. Specify Strong encryption with 802.1X authentication.
- b. Accept the default settings for **Authentication: WPA-2Enterprise** and **Encryption: aes**, then click **Next**.

The Specify Authentication Server screen opens.

You can either select an existing authentication server or specify a new authentication server.

Figure 80 Specifying the Authentication Server for the WLAN

Specify Authentication Server for dot1X_CP in Group default
An enterprise environment typically uses an external RADIUS server for authentication. The controller also has an internal database that can be used for small scale or test deployments. <u>More</u>
Ordered list of Authentication servers:
Up Down
Add Edit Remove
Select from known servers Specify new server
Authentication servers:
Internal
cppm
cppm1
RADIUS
test
OK Cancel

11. To specify an existing W-ClearPass/RADIUS authentication server, click Add.

a. Choose Select from known servers.

- b. Scroll to select the W-ClearPass/RADIUS authentication server, then click **OK**. The selected server is added to the ordered list of authentication servers.
- c. Click **Next**.

The Configure Role Assignment screen opens (skip to Figure 82).

- 12. To specify a new W-ClearPass/RADIUS authentication server, click Add.
 - a. Choose Specify new server.

The following dialog is displayed:

Figure 81	Specifying a New Authentication Server
-----------	----------------------------------------

Specify A	uthentication Server	for dot1X_CP in Group default
An enterprise database tha	e environment typically uses a It can be used for small scale	in external RADIUS server for authentication. The controller also has an internal or test deployments. <u>More</u>
Ordered list	of Authentication servers:	
	Up	
	Down	
Add E	dit Remove	
Select fr	om known servers new server	
Server type:	RADIUS C LDAP	
Name:	CPPM_VM1	
IP address:	10.10.110.20	
Auth port:	1812	
Acct port:	1813	
Shared key:	•••••	
Retype key:	•••••	
	OK Cancel	

b. Populate the Authentication Server parameters as described in Table 14.

Table 14: New SSID Authentication Server Parameter

Parameter	Action/Description
Server type	1. Choose the default server type: RADIUS .
Name	2. Enter the name of the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server.
IP address	3. Enter the IP address of the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server.
Auth port	 4. Specify the authentication port on the RADIUS/Policy Manager server. Range: 1 to 65535 Default: 1812

Parameter	Action/Description
Acct port	5. Specify the accounting port on the RADIUS/Policy Manager server.Range: 1 to 65535Default: 1813
Shared Key	6. Specify the RADIUS Shared Secret for the W-ClearPassPolicy Manager server. NOTE: Make sure that the value of the Key parameter for the RADIUS server configured on the mobility controller is identical to the Shared Key you specify here for the Policy Manager server (see <u>Table 10</u>).

c. When finished, click **OK**.

The selected server is added to the ordered list of authentication servers.

d. Click **Next**.

The **Configure Role Assignment** screen appears.

Figure 82 Configuring the Role Assignment



- After being authenticated, each client is assigned a role, which determines the network resources that the client will have access to.
- Assigning a role is a method to apply a specific set of policies to that user. If W-ClearPass does not specify what role to put a user in, that user is assigned the default role.
- You can assign the same default role to all clients, or assign server-based roles based on the attributes returned by the authentication server.
- 7. Specify the default role, then click **Next**.

The configuration of this Wireless LAN is complete. The **Configuration Summary** page appears, which displays all the settings you configured.

- To print a copy of the WLAN configuration settings, choose **Printable config summary**.
- To see the commands that will be pushed to the mobility controller when the Wireless LAN configuration is applied, choose **Commands to be pushed**.
- 8. To complete the WLAN wizard and apply the settings you have specified, click **Finish**.

The settings specified are pushed to the mobility controller. You receive the message: *Configuration pushed successfully.*

9. Click **Close**.

You now have a new set of configurations for the SSID.

This chapter describes the required steps to integrate W-ClearPass Policy Manager and Microsoft Active Directory. For some use cases, it's required that W-ClearPass is joined to the Active Directory—802.1X authentication with EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPv2 is one such use case. 802.1X authentication with Active Directory as the primary authentication source is the focus of this chapter.

In other use cases, such as with Captive Portal authentication, joining W-ClearPass to Active Directory is optional.

This chapter includes the following information:

- Joining a W-ClearPass Server to an Active Directory Domain
- Adding Active Directory as an Authentication Source to W-ClearPass
- Obtaining and Installing a Signed Certificate From Active Directory
- Manually Testing Login Credentials Against Active Directory

Joining a W-ClearPass Server to an Active Directory Domain

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- Confirming the Date and Time Are in Sync
- Joining an Active Directory Domain
- About the Authentication Source and the Authorization Process
- Manually Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers for Authentication
- Disassociating a W-ClearPass Server From an Active Directory Domain

Introduction

The first task in preparing W-ClearPass for Active Directory® (AD) authentication via EAP-PEAP-CHAP-v2 is to join the W-ClearPass server to an Active Directory domain. Joining W-ClearPass Policy Manager to an Active Directory domain allows you to authenticate users and computers that are members of an Active Directory domain.

Joining W-ClearPass Policy Manager to an Active Directory domain creates a computer account for the W-ClearPass node in the Active Directory database. Users can then authenticate to the network using 802.1X and EAP methods, such as PEAP-MSCHAPv2, with their own their own Active Directory credentials.

A one-time procedure to join W-ClearPass Policy Manager to the domain must be performed from an account that has the ability to join a computer to the domain; if you are unsure whether the administrator account has the ability to do so, check with your Windows administrator.

Why does W-ClearPass need to join Active Directory to perform EAP-PEAP-MS-CHAPv2 authentication for 802.1x? W-ClearPass Policy Manager needs to be joined to Active Directory because when performing authentication for a client using EAP-PEAP-MS-CHAPv2, only the password hashes supplied by the user are used to authenticate against Active Directory. This is done using NT LAN Manager (NTLM) authentication, which requires Active Directory domain membership.

If you need to authenticate users that belong to multiple Active Directory forests or domains in your network, and there is no trust relationship between these entities, then you must join W-ClearPass to each of these untrusting forests or domains.



You do not need to join W-ClearPassPolicy Manager to multiple domains belonging to the same Active Directory forest, because a one-way trust relationship exists between these domains. In this case, you should join CPPM to the root domain.

About the Domain Controller

A *domain* is defined as a logical group of network objects (computers, users, and devices) that share the same active directory database. The *domain controller* is the Microsoft Active Directory server responsible for responding to requests for authentication from users and computer accounts (for example, logging in and checking permissions) within the Windows Server domain. The Active Directory server contains the domain controller.

It's common for an Active Directory domain controller to function as a DNS server. Active Directory domain controllers can also be LDAP servers, as well as perform any number of additional functions that are loaded on the same server.

By default, a domain controller stores one domain directory partition consisting of information about the domain in which it is located, plus the schema and configuration directory partitions for the entire forest.

Confirming the Date and Time Are in Sync

Assuming that this W-ClearPass server has never been joined to the Active Directory domain before, first make sure that the date and time are correct and in sync on both the W-ClearPass server and the Active Directory domain controller that you will use for the join domain operation.

1. In W-ClearPass Policy Manager, navigate to **Administration** > **Server Manager** > **Server Configuration**.

The Server Configuration screen appears:

Figure 83 Server Configuration Screen



 From the Server Configuration screen, click Set Date and Time. The Change Date and Time dialog appears.

Figure 84 Confirming NTP Server Synchronization

Date & Time	Time zor	e on publisher	the clus	ter	
Synchronize time with NTP server					
NTP server (prir	nary)	192.5.41.40]	
NTP server (sec	ondary)	192.5.41.41]	

To synchronize with a Network Time Protocol server, the **Synchronize time with NTP server** check box must be enabled. Nor more than two NTP servers can be specified.

In the example shown in Figure 84, the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server is synchronized to two NTP servers on the Internet.

- 3. Return to the Server Configuration page by clicking Cancel.
- 4. Compare the clock time displayed at the bottom of the W-ClearPass **Server Configuration** page against the clock time on the Active Directory server.



The maximum allowed clock skew between the W-ClearPass server and the Active Directory server is five minutes.

5. If the time on the two systems doesn't exceed the clock skew limit, then proceed.

Joining an Active Directory Domain

To join a W-ClearPass server to an Active Directory domain:

1. In the **Server Configuration** screen, click the **name of the W-ClearPass server** that you want to join to the domain.

The Server Configuration screen for the selected server opens.

Figure 85 Server Configuration Screen for Selected W-ClearPass Server

System Service	s Control Ser	vice Parameters	System Monitoring	Network	FIPS	
Hostname:		CP-66-200				
FQDN:						
Policy Manager Zone:		default	•			Manage Policy Manager Zones
Enable Profile:		Enable this set	rver for endpoint classifi	ication		
Enable Performance M	lonitoring Display:	Enable this set	rver for performance mo	nitoring display	(
Insight Setting:		Enable Insight Current Master:m	Enable Enable	as Insight Mas)	ter	
Enable Ingress Events	Processing:	Enable Ingress	Events processing on t	this server		
Span Port:		None	•			
		IPv4		IPv6		Action
	IP Address	10.				
Management Port	Subnet Mask	255.255	5.255.0			Configure
	Default Gateway	10.				
	IP Address					
Data/External Port	Subnet Mask					Configure
	Default Gateway	r				
	Primary	10.				
DNS Settings	Secondary	10.				Configure
	Tertiary					
AD Domains: Policy Manager is not part of any domain. Join to domain here. Join AD Domain			Join AD Domain			
< Back to Server C	< Back to Server Configuration Save Cancel					

You can now join the Active Directory domain.

2. Click Join AD Domain.

The Join AD Domain dialog opens.

Figure 86 Join AD Domain Dialog

Join AD Domain	8			
Enter the FQDN of the controller and the short (NETBIOS) name for the domain:				
Domain Controller				
NetBIOS Name				
In case of a controlle	r name conflict			
 Use specified Domain Controller Use Domain Controller returned by DNS query Fail on conflict 				
Vse default domain admin user [Administrator]				
Username				
Password				
	Save Cancel			

3. **Domain Controller**: Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the domain controller, then press **Tab**.



Note that the primary DNS server IP address (as shown in <u>Figure 85</u>) is also the IP address of the Active Directory domain controller.

The following message is displayed: *Trying to determine the NetBIOS name...* W-ClearPass searches for the NetBIOS name for the domain.



NetBIOS is another term for the short domain name, or the NT4 domain name, also known as the pre-Windows 2000 domain name.

Figure 87 shows that W-ClearPass found the NetBIOS domain name and populated the **NetBIOS Name** field with the correct name.

Figure 87 Entering the Domain Controller FQDN

Join AD Domain 🔹				
Enter the FQDN of the controller and the short (NETBIOS) name for the domain:				
Domain Controller	ad 1dc 1.higher.edu			
NetBIOS Name HI	GHERED			
In case of a controller name conflict Use specified Domain Controller Use Domain Controller returned by DNS query Fail on conflict				
🗹 Use default domain admin user [Administrator]				
Username				
Password	Password ••••••			
	Save Cancel			

- 4. In case of a controller name conflict:
 - a. Use specified Domain Controller: Accept the default setting.
 - b. Use default domain admin user [Administrator]: Accept the default setting.



In a production environment, it is likely that an Administrative username that has permissions to join machines to the domain would be used for the default domain admin user. In that case, 1) disable (uncheck) the **Use default domain admin user [Administrator]** check box and 2) enter the Administrative username and password in the fields provided.

c. **Password**: Enter the password for the user account that will join W-ClearPass with the domain, then click **Save**.

The **Join AD Domain** screen opens. The screen displays the message "Adding host to AD domain," and the screen displays status during the joining process.

When the joining process completes successfully, you see the message "Added host to the domain."

Figure 88 W-ClearPass Server Added to the Active Directory Domain

Join AD Domain	8		
Added bast to the domain			
Added host to the domain			
INFO - Creating service scripts for HIGHERED			
Starting cpass-domain-server_HIGHERED: [OK]			
INFO - updating domain configuration files			
Stopping cpass-domain-server_HIGHERED: [OK]			
[OK]			
Starting cpass-domain-server_HIGHERED: [OK]			
Stopping cpass-sysmon-server: [OK]			
Starting cpass-sysmon-server: [OK]	E		
Stopping cpass-radius-server: [OK]			
Starting cpass-radius-server: [OK]			
INFO - AV-CP65-VA500-1 joined the domain HIGHER.EDU			
✓ III	P		
	C1		
	Close		

The **Join AD Domain** status screen indicates that the services have restarted. As shown in Figure 88, the final INFO line states that the selected W-ClearPass server joined the domain.

5. Click Close.

You return to the **Server Configuration** page, and it now shows that the W-ClearPass server is joined to the domain.

Figure 89 W-ClearPass Server Joined to Domain

AD D	omains:				Join AD Domain		
	Domain Controller	NetBIOS Name	Password Servers		Action		
1	HIGHER.EDU	HIGHERED	-	₽ /	Leave AD Domain		~
< <u> 8</u>	ack to Server Configuration					Save Cano	el

Now that the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server has joined the domain, the server can authenticate users with Active Directory.

About the Authentication Source and the Authorization Process

During the NTLM authentication process, W-ClearPass queries Active Directory for a suitable domain controller to use to handle the authentication. Please note that when used with 802.1x EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPv2 services, the authentication process is separate from the Active Directory authentication source in W-ClearPass, which in this context only handles authorization.

Optionally, you can configure a list of domain controllers to be used for MSCHAPv2 authentication, as described in the next section, Manually Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers for Authentication.

If you do not specify this list of domain controllers, all available domain controllers obtained from DNS will be used for authentication.

Manually Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers for Authentication

To manually specify Active Directory domain controllers for authentication:

- 1. Navigate to Administration > Server Manager > Server Configuration.
- 2. Select the W-ClearPass server name.

The **Server Configuration** page for the selected server opens by default on the **System** tab.

3. Click the Modify Password Servers icon (located at the bottom of the System page).

Figure 90 Location of Modify Password Servers Icon

AD Domains:			Join AD Domain
Domain Controller	NetBIOS Name	Password Servers	Action
1 HIGHER.EDU	HIGHERED	-	Leave AD Domain
< <u>Back to Server Configuration</u>			Modify Password Servers Save Cancel

The Configure AD Passwords Servers screen appears.

Figure 91 Configuring Active Directory Password Servers

Configure AD Password Servers		
Configure an (optional) restr MSCHAPv2 authentication. I obtained from DNS will be us	icted list of domain controllers to be used for f not specified, all available domain controllers ed for authentications.	
Domain Controller:	HIGHER.EDU	
NetBIOS Name:	HIGHERED	
Password Servers:	ad3dc1.higher.edu	
Note: Enter Hostname or IP Address in the Password Servers textbox, one entry per line		
	Reset Save Cancel	

- 4. In the **Password Servers** text box, enter the names of the domain controllers that will be used for authentication (one entry per line).
- 5. When finished, click **Save**.

Disassociating a W-ClearPass Server From an Active Directory Domain

If a W-ClearPass Policy Manager server is already part of multiple Active Directory domains, follow this procedure to disassociate this W-ClearPass appliance from an Active Directory domain.

To disassociate a W-ClearPass server from an Active Directory domain:

- 1. Navigate to Administration > Server Manager > Server Configuration.
- 2. Select the name of the W-ClearPass server that you want to disassociate from the domain.
- 3. Click Leave AD Domain.

The Leave AD Domain dialog opens.

Figure 92 Leave AD Domain Dialog

Leave AD Domain	8					
Domain Controller	HIGHERED					
Leave domain even if ADUse default domain admin	Leave domain even if AD is Down Use default domain admin user [Administrator]					
Username						
Password	••••••					
	Leave Cancel					

4. Enter the Administrator account password.



The Administrator account doesn't have to be the same account that is used to join the server to the domain—it only has to be an account that has permissions to do this operation.

5. Click **Leave**.

The **Leave AD Domain** status screen appears, with the heading message: "*Removing host from the AD domain.*"

When the process is complete, the status screen displays the message: "Removed host from the domain."

6. Click Close.

When you return to the **Server Configuration** > **System** page, the W-ClearPass server is no longer listed in the AD Domains section.

7. Click Save.

Adding Active Directory as an Authentication Source to W-ClearPass

This section includes the following information:

- About Authorization
- User Objects
- About the Bind Operation
- Adding Active Directory as an Authentication Source

After you have joined W-ClearPass to the domain, add an authentication source to W-ClearPass in order to process authentication and authorization against this Active Directory.

This section describes how to add the Active Directory server as an authentication source in W-ClearPass. This allows W-ClearPass Policy Manager to communicate with Active Directory in order to accomplish authentication and authorization operations.

If you are using EAP-PEAP-MS-CHAPv2, you must join W-ClearPass Policy Manager to the Active Directory domain. Joining the Active Directory domain is necessary in order for W-ClearPass Policy Manager to gain access to the user credential information stored in the Active Directory.



If you are using EAP-TLS for checking client certificates, you don't need to join the W-ClearPass server to the domain.

About Authorization

Authorization is the function of specifying access rights to resources related to information security and computer security in general and to access control in particular. In functional terms, "to authorize" is to define an access policy.

In the context of 802.1X authentication, authorization is accomplished using LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol). LDAP is a protocol for accessing directories. It offers means to search, retrieve, and manipulate directory content and also provides access to a rich set of security functions.

LDAP provides the ability to locate organizations, individuals, and other resources, such as files and devices in a network, whether on the Internet or on a corporate intranet.



When authenticating users via EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPv2 to Active Directory, the authentication source created in W-ClearPass only serves for authorization and not authentication. When authenticating users via Captive Portal, the authentication source created in W-ClearPass serves both authorization and authentication functions.

User Objects

The directory is simply a list of objects. One of those types of objects is a "user" object, and that user object has a number of different attributes, such as last name, first name, group membership, phone number, and so on. There is a default set of attributes, however, the list of user attributes is customizable.

An authentication source of type Active Directory is essentially an LDAP query that W-ClearPass runs. When a user is authenticating, they give W-ClearPass their username. After authentication is successfully completed, W-ClearPass takes the username and, using Active Directory via LDAP, looks up the user and finds all the LDAP attributes pertaining to that user.

About the Bind Operation

The Bind operation allows authentication information to be exchanged between the client and server to establish a new authorization state.

In the Active Directory context, *bind* is a term that indicates authenticating to an LDAP server, which Active Directory must do before it can run any queries against the LDAP server.

Active Directory must provide credentials to prove to the LDAP server that it is authorized to make queries against it. Only entities and devices that have an account can make queries against Active Directory.

Adding Active Directory as an Authentication Source

This procedure creates a policy that is based on information that Active Directory has about users in the domain.

Group Membership

The most commonly applied user attribute is *group membership*. In Active Directory, you can define groups and put users into the groups you define. For example, a college might have groups for students, faculty, and contractors.

The policy can dictate that students are given a limited level of access to the network, whereas members of the faculty are typically given a higher level of access to the network.

Active Directory needs to know which group each user who is trying to authenticate is a member of. This allows W-ClearPass to do *enforcement*, which is the process of determining what each user will be allowed to do on the network.

Additional Enforcement Information

After authentication takes place, there are usually additional enforcement details provided to the controller, such as VLAN assignment and user membership.

To add Active Directory as an authentication source:

1. In the W-ClearPass Policy Manager, navigate to **Configuration** > **Authentication** > **Sources**.

The following screen appears:

Figure 93 Authentication Sources Screen

Config Aut	guration hen	on » Authentication » Sources tication Sources		Add Amport Export All
#		Name A	Type	Description
1		[Admin User Repository]	Local SQL DB	Authenticate users against Policy Manager admin user
2		[Blacklist User Repository]	Local SQL DB	Blacklist database with users who have exceeded bandwidth or session related limits
3		[Endpoints Repository]	Local SQL DB	Authenticate endpoints against Policy Manager local database
4		[Guest Device Repository]	Local SQL DB	Authenticate guest devices against Policy Manager local database
5		[Guest User Repository]	Local SQL DB	Authenticate guest users against Policy Manager local database
6		[Insight Repository]	Local SQL DB	Insight database with session information for users and devices
7		[Local User Repository]	Local SQL DB	Authenticate users against Policy Manager local user database
8		[Onboard Devices Repository]	Local SQL DB	Authenticate Onboard devices against Policy Manager local database
9		[Social Login Repository]	Local SQL DB	Authenticate users against Policy Manager social login database
10		[Time Source]	Local SQL DB	Authorization source for implementing various time functions
	Sho	wing 1-10 of 10		Copy Export Delete

2. Click Add.

General Page

The Authentication Sources General page appears.

Figure 94 Authentication Sources General Page

Configuration » Authentication » Sources » Add

Authentication Sources

General Primary	Attributes Summary
Name:	ad1dc1
Description:	
Type:	Active Directory
Use for Authorization:	$\overline{\mathbb{V}}$ Enable to use this Authentication Source to also fetch role mapping attributes
Authorization Sources:	Select
Server Timeout:	10 seconds
Cache Timeout:	36000 seconds
Backup Servers Priority:	Add Backup Remove

3. Enter the values for these parameters as described in <u>Table 15</u>.

Parameter	Action/Description			
Name	1. Enter the name of the Active Directory authentication source.			
Description	2. Provide the additional information that helps to identify the Active Directory authentication source.			
Туре	3. If not already selected, select Active Directory .			
Use for Authorization	When <i>Use for Authorization</i> is enabled, W-ClearPass can use this authentication source to fetch role-mapping attributes. This option is enabled by default.			
Authorization Sources	 Specifies additional sources from which role-mapping attributes may be fetched. 4. Select a previously configured authentication source from the drop-down list. 5. To add authentication source to the list of authorization sources, click Add. To remove the authentication source from the list, click Remove. If Policy Manager authenticates the user or device from this authentication source, it also fetches role mapping attributes from these additional authorization sources. 			

Parameter	Action/Description			
Server Timeout	Specifies the duration in number of seconds that Policy Manager waits before considering this server unreachable. If multiple backup servers are available, then this value indicates the duration in number of seconds that Policy Manager waits before attempting to fail over from the primary to the backup servers in the order in which they are configured.			
Cache Timeout	Policy Manager caches attributes fetched for an authenticating entity. This parameter controls the duration in number of seconds for which the attributes are cached.			
Backup Servers Priority	 To add a backup server, click Add Backup. The Backup 1 tab appears. The Primary page parameters are prepopulated in the Backup 1 page. To complete the configuration for the backup server, specify the hostname for the backup server. To remove a backup server, select the server name and click Remove. To change the server priority of the backup servers, select Move Up or Move Down. The server priority is the order in which Policy Manager attempts to connect to the backup servers when the primary server is unreachable. NOTE: Dell recommends setting up one or more backup servers. 			

3. When satisfied with these settings, click **Next**.

The Authentication Sources **Primary** page opens.

Primary Page

Figure 95 Primary Page: Active Directory Authentication Source

Configuration » Authentication » Sources » Add

Authentication Sources

For successful authentications, make sure you have the CA cert of the AD/LDAP added to Certificate Trust List

General Primary	Attributes Summary
Connection Details	
Hostname:	ad1dc2
Connection Security:	AD over SSL
Port:	636 (For secure connection, use 636)
Verify Server Certificate:	Enable to verify Server Certificate for secure connection
Bind DN:	
	(e.g. administrator@example.com OR cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=example,dc=com)
Bind Password:	
NetBIOS Domain Name:	
Base DN:	Search Base Dn
Search Scope:	SubTree Search
LDAP Referrals:	Follow referrals
Bind User:	Allow bind using user password
User Certificate :	userCertificate
Always use NETBIOS name:	Enable to always use NETBIOS name instead of the domain part in username for authentication

Parameter	Action/Description					
	1. Enter the name or IP address of the Active Directory server you're going to use for authentication.					
Hostname	The host name entered here must be an LDAP server (note that most domain controllers are also LDAP servers). W-ClearPass uses LDAP to talk to the domain controller.					
	2. Set Connection Security to: AD over SSL.					
	This enables the secure sockets layer (SSL) cryptographic protocol to connect to your Active Directory. Selecting AD over SSL automatically populates the <i>Port</i> field to 636 .					
Connection Security	NOTE: In a production environment, security is a concern because when W-ClearPass binds to an LDAP server, it submits the username and password for that account over the network under clear text unless you protect it using Connection Security and set the port to 636 .					
	NOTE: To ensure successful authentication, be sure to add the CA certificate of the Active Directory/LDAP server to the Certificate Trust List. For more information, refer to Importing the Root CA Files to the Certificate Trust List.					
	3. Specify the TCP port at which the Active Directory server is listening for connections.					
	For a single domain Active Directory Domain Service:					
	Default port for LDAP: 389					
	Default port for LDAP over SSL: 636					
Port	When you set the <i>Connection Security</i> field to AD over SSL , this port is automatically set to 636 .					
	For a multi-domain Active Directory Domain Service (AD DS) forest, the default ports for the global catalog are:					
	Default port without SSL: 3268					
	Default port with SSL: 3269					
Verify Server Certificate	4. Enable this option to verify the Server Certificate for a secure connection.					
	5. Enter the Distinguished Name of the node in your directory tree from which to start searching for records.					
Bind DN	The Bind DN text box specifies the full distinguished name (DN), including common name (CN), of an Active Directory user account that has privileges to search for users (usually the Administrator account). For example:					
	CN=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=mycompany,DC=com					
	NOTE: You may need to get the Bind DN from the Active Directory administrator.					
	This user account must have at least domain user privileges.					
	The Bind DN user, such as Administrator, is the username associated with the Bind DN user account.					

Table 16: Primary Parameters for an Active Directory Authentication Source

Parameter	ameter Action/Description					
	 For a single domain Active Directory Domain Service, the Bind DN entry must be located in the same branch and below the Base DN. 					
	 For a multi-domain Active Directory Domain Service (AD DS) forest, because you leave the Base DN text box empty, the restrictions that apply for a single domain do not apply for a multi-domain forest. 					
	W-ClearPass fills in the domain portion of the Bind DN.					
	6. Specify the username.					
	W-ClearPass also populates the <i>Base DN</i> , and the <i>NetBIOS Domain Name</i> fields.					
	For related information, see <u>About the Bind Operation</u> .					
	This is the text box for the Active Directory password for the account that can search for users.					
Bind Password	7. Enter the Bind Password .					
	NOTE: The Bind password is the same password used in association with the Bind DN user account.					
NetBIOS Domain Name	This field is automatically populated.					
	 For a single domain Active Directory Domain Service, this is the text box for the Distinguished Name (DN) of the starting point for directory server searches. For example: DC=mycompany,DC=com 					
	Active Directory starts from this DN to create master lists from which you can later filter out individual users and groups.					
	NOTE: The Base DN value that is automatically populated in this instance is <i>not</i> the best practice Base DN value.					
Base DN	Dell recommends that you narrow down the Base DN as far as possible to reduce the load on the Active Directory/LDAP server. For example, if all your users are in the AD Users and Computer Users folder, then set the Base DN to search in the Users folder.					
	 To browse the LDAP directory hierarchy, click Search Base DN. The LDAP Browser opens. 					
	10. Navigate to the DN you want to use as the Base DN.					
	11. Click on the appropriate node in the tree structure to select it as a Base DN.					
	 For a multi-domain Active Directory Domain Service (AD DS) forest, the appropriate action is to leave the Base DN text box blank. 					
	NOTE: This is also one way to test the connectivity to your Active Directory directory. If the values entered for the primary server attributes are correct, you should be able to browse the directory hierarchy by clicking Search Base DN .					
	Search scope is related to the Base DN. The search scope defines how Active Directory will search for your objects.					
Search Scope	12. Specify the search scope you wish to apply.					
	• Subtree Search: Searches every object and sub-object in the LDAP directory.					
	One-Level Search: Looks directly under the Base DN.					

Parameter	eter Action/Description					
	Base Object: Searches any object under the Base DN.					
LDAP Referrals	Dell does <i>not</i> recommend enabling the "Follow Referrals" check box. This function directs the LDAP server to find a specific user in its tree, but it's possible for the user to be included on another LDAP server, which can cause a search loop.					
Bind User	This option allows the bind operation using a password. The Allow bind using user password check box is enabled by default.					
User Certificate	Leave the value that is automatically populated in this field as the default unless your Active Directory administrator has a different attribute for storing the user certificate.					
Always use NetBlOS name	Enable this option only if you want to use the value specified in the <i>NetBIOS Domain</i> <i>Name</i> field to authenticate the user instead of using the domain name present in the User Name RADIUS attribute.					

13. When satisfied with the Authentication Sources **Primary** page settings, click **Next**.

The Active Directory **Attributes** page opens.

Active Directory > Attributes Page

Figure 96 Active Directory Default Attributes

Configuration » Authentication » Sources » Add

Authentication Sources

Gene	eral Primary	Attributes	Summary				
Specify	Specify filter queries used to fetch authentication and authorization attributes						
Fil	lter Name	Attril	oute Name	Alias Name	Enabled As		Ť
1. Au	1. Authentication			UserDN	-	5	Ē
		depa	rtment	Department	-		
				Title	-		
			any	company	-		
			berOf	memberOf	-		
			honeNumber	Phone	-		
				Email	-		
			yName	Name	-		
	acco	untExpires	Account Expires	-			
2. Gr	oup	cn		Groups	-	Ð) T
3. M	achine	dNSH	ostName	HostName	-	E	ا
		opera	ntingSystem	OperatingSystem	-		
		opera	ntingSystemSer	vicePack OSServicePack	-		
4. Or	nboard Device Own	er memb	berOf	Onboard memberOf	-		Ē
5. Or	nboard Device Own	er Group cn		Onboard Groups	-	Ð	Ē

Add More Filters

The **Attributes** dialog defines the Active Directory or LDAP Directory query filters and the attributes to be fetched by using those filters.

Obtaining and Installing a Signed Certificate From Active Directory

This section describes how to obtain and install a signed server certificate from Active Directory for 802.1X authentication. This section contains the following information:

- About Certificates in W-ClearPass Deployments
- How to Obtain a Signed Certificate from Active Directory
- Creating a Certificate Signing Request
- Importing the Root CA Files to the Certificate Trust List
- Obtaining a Signed Certificate from Active Directory
- Importing a Server Certificate into W-ClearPass

About Certificates in W-ClearPass Deployments

A certificate is a file that makes it possible for network devices to communicate with each other securely. For example, in W-ClearPass deployments, certificates are provided for all devices involved in authentication, such as client laptops, smart phones, Mobility controllers, Mobility Access Switches, W-ClearPass Policy Manager servers, and so on.

How do certificates help you to communicate securely? It does this in two ways:

- Certificates help devices verify the identity of other devices.
- Certificates enable devices to use encryption to securely communicate with each other.

When a certificate is created, two keys are generated:

Private key

The private key is always stored securely and never sent out. If the private key is compromised, the entire security framework established by the certificate is compromised.

Public key

The public key contains important information about the certificate owner. The public key is inside the file that is sent to all devices that wish to communicate with the certificate owner. This file contains additional information about the identity of the certificate owner's device.

Public and private key pairs are generated so that any data encrypted by one of these keys can only be decrypted by the other corresponding key.

Any data encrypted by the private key can only be decrypted by the corresponding public key. Conversely, any data encrypted by the public key can only be decrypted by the corresponding private key.

When Certificate Usage Is Necessary

There are three common situations in which certificates are necessary in W-ClearPass deployments:

- When using HTTPS to manage network devices such as mobility controllers, mobility access switches, or W-ClearPass servers.
- During captive portal authentication.
- When doing 802.1X authentication.

How 802.1X Authentication Uses Server Certificates

When an employee attempts to log into his laptop, the EAP-PEAP authentication process begins:

- 1. The W-ClearPass Policy Manager server sends the server certificate to the employee's device.
- 2. The employee sends his encrypted username and password to the server.
3. The server verifies the employee's credentials, and the employee is connected to the network.

Using Both Client and Server Certificates

There is a potential problem in this authentication sequence—the employee verified the server's identity, but the server didn't verify the employee's identity. It is possible that the user stole the username and password from another employee and is using these stolen credentials on his own device.

This problem can be solved by using both a client certificate and a server certificate. Because EAP-TLS authentication employs both server and client certificates, when the employee begins authentication, the W-ClearPass server sends the server certificate to the employee's laptop. The employee's laptop then sends the client certificate to the server.

Both the client and the server can then verify the identity of the other party and are ready to proceed: The employee sends the encrypted username and password to the server, the server verifies the employee's credentials, and the employee is connected to the network. This access process is secure.

How to Obtain a Signed Certificate from Active Directory

The tasks to obtain a signed certificate from Active Directory are as follows:

- 1. Create a Certificate Signing Request.
- 2. Import the root Certificate Authority file to the Certificate Trust List.
- 3. Obtain a signed certificate from Active Directory.
- 4. Import a server certificate into the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server.

These tasks are described in the following sections.

Creating a Certificate Signing Request

This task creates a Certificate Signing Request to be signed by a Certificate Authority (CA).

<u>Figure 97</u> shows an example of the Create Certificate Signing Request page, followed by descriptions of each parameter (see <u>Table 17</u>).

To create a Certificate Signing Request:

- 1. In W-ClearPass, navigate to Administration > Certificates > Server Certificates.
- 2. Select the Create Certificate Signing Request link.



Create Certificate Signing Reque	st ⊗
Common Name (CN):	Garuda-197
Organization (O):	Acme Systems
Organizational Unit (OU):	Engineering
Location (L):	Sunnyvale
State (ST):	CA
Country (C):	US
Subject Alternate Name (SAN):	email:admin-sunnyvale@acme.com
Private Key Password:	•••••
Verify Private Key Password:	•••••
Private Key Type:	2048-bit RSA 🔻
Digest Algorithm:	SHA-512 MD5 SHA-1 Submit Cancel SHA-224 SHA-256 SHA-384 SHA-512 SHA-512 SHA-512

3. Enter the information for each of the required parameters as described in <u>Table 17</u>.

Table 17: Parameters for Creating a Certificate Signing Request

Parameter	Action/Description	
Common Name	Displays the name associated with this entity. This can be a host name, IP address, or other name. The default is the fully-qualified domain name (FQDN). This field is mandatory.	
Organization (O)	Specify the name of the organization. This field is optional.	
Organizational Unit (OU)	Specify the name of the department, division, or section. This field is optional.	
Location (L)		
State (ST)	Specify the name of the state, country, and/or another location. These fields are optional	
Country (C)		
Subject Alternate Name Specify the alternative names for the specified Common Name. NOTE: Specify the SAN in the following formats: • email: email_address • URI: url • URI: url		

Parameter	Action/Description		
	 IP: <i>ip_address</i> dns: <i>dns_name</i> rid: <i>id</i> This field is optional. 		
Private Key Password	1. Enter the private key password, then reenter it to verify the password.		
Private Key Type	 Select the length for the generated private key types from the following options: 1024-bit RSA 2048-bit RSA 4096-bit RSA X9.62/SECG curve over a 256 bit prime field NIST/SECG curve over a 384 bit prime field The default private key type is 2048-bit RSA. 		
Digest Algorithm	 3. Select one of the following message digest algorithms: MD5 SHA-1 SHA-224 SHA-256 SHA-384 SHA-512 NOTE: The MD5 algorithm is not available in FIPS mode. 		

4. When satisfied with the certificate signing request parameter settings, click **Submit**. The **Certificate Signing Request** is generated and displayed (see Figure 98).



- Copy the contents of the certificate request into a text file so that you can paste it into the Directory Certificate Services web form as described in <u>Obtaining a Signed Certificate from Active Directory on page</u> <u>113</u>.
- 6. To save the Certificate Signing Request file and the private key password file, click **Download CSR and Private Key Files**.



Be sure to note the location where you save the Certificate Signing Request and the private key password files.

Importing the Root CA Files to the Certificate Trust List

Make sure the root Certificate Authority (CA) certificate and any intermediate CA certificates are downloaded as separate base-64-encoded files and imported into the Certificate Trust List in W-ClearPass *before* starting this operation.

To import the root CA files into the W-ClearPass server Certificate Trusted List:

1. Get all of the root CA certificate and any intermediate CA certificates from your Active Directory administrator.

This typically consists of a root CA certificate and one or more intermediate CA certificates.

2. In W-ClearPass Policy Manager, navigate to Administration > Certificates > Trust List.

Figure 99 Certificate Trust List

Admin Cert	istration » Certificates » Trust List ificate Trust List		📌 Add
Filter	Subject Contains Go	Clear Filter S	now 10 💌 records
#	□ Subject ▲	Validity	Enabled
1.	C=BE, O=GlobalSign nv-sa, OU=Root CA, CN=GlobalSign Root CA	valid	Disabled
2.	C=DE, O=TC TrustCenter GmbH, OU=TC TrustCenter Universal CA, CN=TC TrustCenter Universal CA I	valid	Disabled
3.	C=GB, ST=Greater Manchester, L=Salford, O=COMODO CA Limited, CN=COMODO High-Assurance Secure Server CA	valid	Disabled
4.	CN=AddTrust External CA Root, OU=AddTrust External TTP Network, O=AddTrust AB, C=SE	valid	Enabled
5.	CN=InCommon Server CA, OU=InCommon, O=Internet2, C=US	valid	Enabled
6.	CN=ns-ISCA-CA, DC=ns, DC=arubatac, DC=us	valid	Enabled
7.	CN=ns-RCA-CA, DC=ns, DC=arubatac, DC=us	valid	Enabled
8.	C=PL, O=Unizeto Sp. z o.o., CN=Certum CA	valid	Disabled
9.	C=SE, O=AddTrust AB, OU=AddTrust External TTP Network, CN=AddTrust External CA Root	valid	Enabled
10.	C=US, O=DigiCert Inc, OU=www.digicert.com, CN=DigiCert Global Root CA	valid	Disabled
	Showing 1-10 of 43 > >		Delete

3. To add the certificate file(s) to the Certificate Trust List, click **Add**, then browse to the root CA certificate file on your computer.



Be sure to add the root CA file first, then add the intermediate CA files after you've added the root CA file.

The root CA certificate file is now listed in the Certificate Trust List.

Figure 100 New Root CA File(s) Added to the Certificate Trust List

	ClearPass Policy Manager	Suppo adm	nin (Super Adm
Dashboard O	Administration = Certificates = Trust List Certificate Trust List 1 Certificate(s) added to the trust list		📌 Add
Configuration 0			
- 🎤 ClearPass Portal - 🕰 Users and Privileges	Filter: Subject Go Clear Filter Go Clear Filter Go Clear Filter	Validity	Enabled
Server Manager	1. C=BE, O=GlobalSign nv-sa, OU=Root CA, CN=GlobalSign Root CA 2. C=DE, O=TC TrustCenter GmbH, OU=TC TrustCenter Universal CA, CN=TC TrustCenter Universal CA I	valid valid	Disabled Disabled
- Dig Configuration - Dig Local Shared Folders	C=SB, ST=Greater Manchester, L=Salford, O=COMODO CA Limited, CN=COMODO High-Assurance Secure Server CA ON-AddTrust External CA Boot, OII=AddTrust External TTP Network, O=AddTrust AB, C=SE	valid	Disabled
Licensing External Servers	CN-InCommon Server CA, OU=InCommon, O=Internet2, C=US	valid	Enabled
Server Certificate	 CHEINSIGCHON, DEEINS, DEEINSIGCHONS CNEINSIGCHON, DEEINS, DEEINSIGCHONSIGC	valid	Enabled
- PRevocation Lists	C=PL, O=Unizeto Sp. z o.o., CN=Certum CA C=SE, O=AddTrust AB, OU=AddTrust External TTP Network, CN=AddTrust External CA Root	valid valid	Enabled
Support Software Updates	10. C - US, O - DigiCert Inc, OU = www.digicert.com, CN = DigiCert Global Root CA Showing 1-10 of 43	valid	Disabled

- 4. Make sure the Enabled column for the newly added certificate says *Enabled*, which is the correct status when you successfully import a certificate manually.
- 5. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 for each certificate you received from your Active Directory administrator.

Obtaining a Signed Certificate from Active Directory

This section describes how to obtain a signed server certificate from Active Directory.



Before you begin this operation, have the copy of the Certificate Signing Request at hand, as described in Step 4 of Creating a Certificate Signing Request on page 109.

Also note the location where you saved the Certificate Signing Request and the private key password files, as you will need to retrieve these items to complete this operation.

To obtain a signed certificate from Active Directory:

1. Navigate to the Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services page:

Figure 101 Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services

Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services ns-ISCA-CA	<u>Home</u>
Welcome	
Use this Web site to request a certificate for your Web browser, e-mail client, or other program. By using a certificate, you verify your identity to people you communicate with over the Web, sign and encrypt messages, and, depending upon the to of certificate you request, perform other security tasks.	can type
You can also use this Web site to download a certificate authority (CA) certificate, certificate chain, or certificate revocation (CRL), or to view the status of a pending request.	n list
For more information about Active Directory Certificate Services, see <u>Active Directory Certificate Services Documentation</u> .	<u>l</u> -
Select a task: Request a certificate View the status of a pending certificate request Download a CA certificate, certificate chain, or CRL	

2. Click Request a certificate.

Figure 102 Certificate Services: Request a Certificate

Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services -- ns-ISCA-CA

Request a Certificate

Select the certificate type:

User Certificate

Or, submit an advanced certificate request.

3. Choose advanced certificate request.

The Submit a Certificate Request or Renewal Request dialog appears.

This operation submits a saved certificate request to the Certificate Authority.

Figure 103 AD Certificate Services: Submit a Certificate Request

Microsoft Active	Directory Certificate Services ns-ISCA-CA	<u>Home</u>
Submit a Cert	ificate Request or Renewal Request	
To submit a sa or PKCS #7 re Request box.	ved request to the CA, paste a base-64-encoded newal request generated by an external source (CMC or PKCS #10 certificate request such as a Web server) in the Saved
Saved Request:		
Base-64-encoded certificate request (CMC or PKCS #10 or PKCS #7):		
Certificate Templ	late:	
	User	
Additional Attribu	ites:	
Attributes:	.4	
	Submit >	

- 4. Copy the contents of the Certificate Signing Request into the **Saved Request** text box.
- In the Certificate Template drop-down menu, select Web Server.
 Figure 104 shows an example of the completed Certificate Request web form.

Figure 104 Completed Submit a Certificate Request Dialog

<i>Microsoft</i> Active	Directory Certificate Services ns-ISCA-CA Home
Submit a Cert	ificate Request or Renewal Request
To submit a sa or PKCS #7 re Request box.	ved request to the CA, paste a base-64-encoded CMC or PKCS #10 certificate request newal request generated by an external source (such as a Web server) in the Saved
Saved Request:	
Base-64-encoded certificate request (CMC or PKCS #10 or PKCS #7):	CERTIFICATE REQUEST MIIDDjCCAfYCAQAwcTEQMA4GA1UEAxMHY3BwbS01 ZXJpbmcxFTATBgNVBAoTDEFjbWUgU31zdGVtczEL BAYTALVTMRYwFAYDVQQHEwlTYW4gRJhbmMpc2Nv AAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAwRe07c/s2VD3/rl/nV3Q ebRJnmyzTRciMeFDAD91yheHAIszDGCqQQ7tGPiz
Certificate Temp	late:
	Web Server
Additional Attribu	ites:
Attributes:	ĥ.
	Submit >

6. Click Submit.

The Certificate Issued dialog appears.

Figure 105 AD Certificate Services: Certificate Issued



7. Do the following:

a. Select Base 64 encoded.

Base-64 encoding is used for 802.1X authentication.

b. Click Download certificate.

The server certificate is downloaded to your system.

c. Be sure to note the name of the downloaded certificate so that you can identify it when you import the server certificate into the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server.

Importing a Server Certificate into W-ClearPass

To import a server certificate into W-ClearPass:

1. Navigate to Administration > Certificates > Server Certificate.

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager Server Certificate dialog appears.

Figure 106 W-ClearPass Policy Manager Server Certificate Dialog

C	Support Help Logout admin (Super Administrator)	
Administration » Certificate	s » Server Certificate	
Server Certificate		 Create Self-Signed Certificate Create Certificate Signing Request Import Server Certificate Export Server Certificate
Select Server: cppm-5K	Select Type: RADIUS S	erver Certificate
Subject:	O=PolicyManager, CN=cppm-5K	
Issued by:	O=PolicyManager, CN=cppm-5K	
Issue Date:	Oct 09, 2014 16:09:56 PDT	
Expiry Date:	Oct 09, 2015 16:09:56 PDT	
Validity Status:	Valid	
Details:	View Details	

2. From the Select Server drop-down menu, select the appropriate W-ClearPass server.

When you select the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server, the Select Type field is automatically populated.

3. Select the Import Server Certificate link.

The Import Server Certificate dialog is displayed.

Figure 107 Import Server Certificate Dialog

Import Server Certificate	• •
Selected Server:	cppm-5K
Selected Type:	RADIUS Server Certificate
Certificate File:	Browse certnew.cer
Private Key File:	Browse CertPrivKey.pkey
Private Key Password:	•••••
	Import Cancel

- 4. Do the following:
 - a. **Certificate File**: Browse to the certificate file that was downloaded by Active Directory Certificate Services.
 - b. Private Key File: Browse to the private key file to be imported.
 - c. **Private Key Password**: Specify the private key password that was entered when the Certificate Signing Request was configured.
- 5. Click Import.

The selected server certificate is imported into W-ClearPass. The Server Certificate screen displays the message "Server Certificate updated successfully. Please log in again to continue."

C	ClearPass Policy Manager	<u>Support</u> <u>Help</u> <u>Logout</u> admin (Super Administrator)
Administration » Certificate	es » Server Certificate	
Server Certificate		 Interpretation Interpretating and an an
Server Certificate u	pdated successfully. Please log in again to c	continue
Select Server: cppm-5K	▼ Selec	t Type: RADIUS Server Certificate
Subject:	CN=cppm-5K, OU=Engineering, O=Acme Syste	ems, L=San Francisco, ST=CA, C=US
Issued by:	CN=ns-ISCA-CA, DC=ns, DC=arubatac, DC=us	5
Issue Date:	Nov 25, 2014 07:31:05 PST	
Expiry Date:	May 20, 2015 14:06:49 PDT	
Validity Status:	Valid	
Details:	View Details	
Intermediate CA Certific	cate:	
Subject:	CN=ns-ISCA-CA, DC=ns, DC=arubatac, DC=us	5
Issued by:	CN=ns-RCA-CA, DC=ns, DC=arubatac, DC=us	
Issue Date:	May 20, 2013 13:56:49 PDT	
Expiry Date:	May 20, 2015 14:06:49 PDT	
Validity Status:	Valid	
Details:	View Details	
Root CA Certificate:		
Subject:	CN=ns-RCA-CA, DC=ns, DC=arubatac, DC=us	
Issued by:	CN=ns-RCA-CA, DC=ns, DC=arubatac, DC=us	
Issue Date:	May 20, 2013 11:59:22 PDT	
Expiry Date:	May 20, 2023 12:09:21 PDT	
Validity Status:	Valid	
Details:	View Details	

6. Log out of the W-ClearPass server, then log in again to resume operations on this server.

Manually Testing Login Credentials Against Active Directory

To test a username and password against the Active Directory, run the **ad auth** command in the Policy Manager CLI.

This command manually checks against Active Directory to indicate whether or not a username and password are valid.

- 1. Enter the following CLI command:
 - (server) # ad auth -u <username> -n <NetBIOS_domain_name>
 - -u indicates the username.
 - -n indicates the NetBIOS domain name.

For example:

(Server) # ad auth -u administrator -n COLLEGE

You are prompted to enter the password.

If the username and password you provide in this command are correct, the following message is displayed:

INFO – NT_STATUS_OK: Success (0x0)

This message indicates that NTLM authentication (NTLM being the mechanism that W-ClearPass uses to authenticate users) has succeeded.

This chapter includes the following information:

- About 802.1X Authentication
- What Is AAA?
- Walking Through an 802.1X Authentication Scenario
- <u>Configuring 802.1X Wireless Authentication with Active Directory</u>
- Troubleshooting 802.1X Configuration Issues

About 802.1X Authentication

This section contains the following information:

- Introducing 802.1X
- 802.1X Authentication Components

Introducing 802.1X

This chapter describes how to configure 802.1X wireless authentication with Active Directory in a Dell network.

802.1X is an IEEE standard and a method for authenticating the identity of a user before providing network access to the user. 802.1X provides an authentication mechanism to devices that need to attach to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service) is a protocol that provides centralized authentication, authorization, and accounting management (for details, see <u>What Is AAA? on page 121</u>).

For authentication purpose, the wireless client can associate with a network access server (NAS) or a RADIUS client. W-ClearPass is a RADIUS server. The wireless client can pass data traffic only after successful 802.1X authentication.

- 802.1X offers the capability to permit or deny network connectivity based on the identity of the end user or device.
- 802.1X enables port-based access control using authentication. An 802.1X-enabled port can be dynamically enabled or disabled based on the identity of the user or device that connects to it.

Before authentication, the identity of the endpoint is unknown and all traffic is blocked. After authentication, the identity of the endpoint is known and all traffic from that endpoint is allowed.

802.1X Authentication Components

802.1x authentication consists of three components—a *supplicant*, an *authenticator*, and an *authentication server* (see Figure 109).

- The *supplicant*, or client, is the device attempting to gain access to the network. You can configure the usercentric network to support 802.1x authentication for wired users as well as wireless users.
- The *authenticator* is the gatekeeper to the network and permits or denies access to the supplicants.

The Mobility Controller acts as the authenticator, relaying information between the authentication/W-ClearPass server and the supplicant. The EAP type must be consistent between the authentication server and supplicant and is transparent to the mobility controller. • The *authentication server* is typically a host running software supporting the RADIUS and EAP protocols. It provides a database of information required for authentication and informs the authenticator to deny or permit access to the supplicant. In this guide, the authentication server is the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server.





Table 18 describes each of the W-ClearPass firewall ports that are used by Active Directory®.

Table 18: Active Directory W-ClearPass Firewall Port	Table	18:	Active	Directory	W-ClearPass	Firewall Ports
------------------------------------------------------	-------	-----	--------	-----------	-------------	----------------

Firewall Port	Description
UDP Port 88	Used for Kerberos authentication.
TCP and UDP Port 135	Used for domain controller-to-domain controller and client-to-domain controller operations.
UDP Port 389	Used for LDAP to handle normal queries from client computers to the domain controllers.
TCP and UDP Port 445	Used for Kerberos Password Change.
TCP Ports 3268 and 3269	Used for Global Catalog distribution from the client to the domain controller. The Global Catalog makes the directory structure within a forest transparent to users who perform a search. In a multidomain Active Directory Domain Services (AD DS) forest, the Global Catalog provides a central repository of domain information for the forest by storing partial replicas of all domain directory partitions. These partial replicas are distributed by multimaster replication to all Global Catalog servers in a forest.
TCP and UDP Port 53	Used for DNS from the client to the domain controller and from the domain controller to another domain controller.
ICMP types echo (8) and echo-reply (0)	The Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) has many messages that are identified by a Type field. ICMP types echo (8) and echo-reply (0) are used between the CPPM host and the domain controller during the domain join operation (see Joining a W-ClearPass Server to an Active Directory Domain on page 93).

What Is AAA?

AAA stands for authentication, authorization, and accounting.

AAA is a framework for intelligently controlling access to computer resources, enforcing policies, auditing usage, and providing the information necessary to bill for services. These processes working in concert are important for effective network management and security.

Authentication

Authentication provides a method of identifying a user, typically by having the user enter a valid username and password before access to the network is granted. Authentication is based on each user having a unique set of login credentials for gaining network access.

The AAA server compares a user's authentication credentials with other user credentials stored in a database; in this case, that database is Active Directory. If the user's login credentials match, the user is granted access to the network. If the credentials don't match, authentication fails and network access is denied.

Authorization

Following authentication, a user must gain authorization for doing certain tasks. After logging in to a system, for instance, the user may try to issue commands. The authorization process determines whether the user has the authority to issue such commands.

Simply put, authorization is the process of enforcing policies—determining what types or qualities of activities, resources, or services a user is permitted. Usually authorization occurs within the context of authentication. After you have authenticated a user, they may be authorized for different types of access or activity.

As it relates to network authentication via RADIUS and 802.1x, authorization can be used to determine what VLAN, Access Control List (ACL), or user role that the user belongs to.

Accounting

The final piece in the AAA framework is accounting, which monitors the resources a user consumes during network access. This can include the amount of system time or the amount of data sent and received during a session.

Accounting is carried out by logging session statistics and usage information. It is used for authorization control, billing, trend analysis, resource utilization, and planning for the data capacity required for business operations.

W-ClearPass Policy Manager functions as the accounting server and receives accounting information about the user from the Network Access Server (NAS). The NAS must be configured to use W-ClearPass Policy Manager as an accounting server, and it is up to the NAS to provide accurate accounting information to W-ClearPass Policy Manager.

Configuring 802.1X Wireless Authentication with Active Directory

This section contains the following information:

- <u>Authenticating Against Active Directory</u>
- About the 802.1X Wireless Service
- Creating the 802.1X Wireless Service
- Deleting a W-ClearPass Policy Manager Service

This section describes how to use the W-ClearPass Policy Manager to configure 802.1X authentication with Active Directory in a Dell network.

Authenticating Against Active Directory

802.1x authentication can be used to authenticate users or computers against a user database or domain such as Microsoft Active Directory (for related information, see <u>Preparing for Active Directory Authentication on page 93</u>).

The supplicant (wireless client) authenticates against the RADIUS server (which is the authentication server/W-ClearPass Policy Manager server) using an EAP method configured on both the supplicant and the RADIUS server. They will, in turn, negotiate which EAP method to use based on the list of EAP methods each one supports.

The mobility controller's (authenticator) role is to send authentication messages between the supplicant and authentication server. This means the RADIUS server is responsible for authenticating users.)

Mobility controllers perform EAP exchanges between the supplicant and convert these to RADIUS accessrequest messages that are sent to the RADIUS server's IP address and the specified UDP port (for details, see <u>A</u><u>Tour of the EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPv2 Ladder on page 191</u>).

About the 802.1X Wireless Service

The basic Policy Manager use case configures a Policy Manager Service to identify and evaluate a RADIUS request from a user logging into a Mobility Controller.

Figure 110 illustrates the authentication process flow for an 802.1X Wireless Service.





Table 19 provides descriptions of each of the 802.1X authentication processes illustrated in Figure 110.

Table 19: Description of the 802.1X Authentication Processes

	Authentication Process	Description
1	RADIUS Access- Request	The Network Access Server (NAS) sends a RADIUS access request to Policy Manager, which then evaluates the request and identifies RADIUS connection control attributes.
2	Service Categorization	Based on the RADIUS connection control attributes identified by Policy Manager, the request will be categorized into a Policy Manager service.
3	Authentication Method	Policy Manager attempts to authenticate the user (in order of priority) using the authentication method defined in the Policy Manager service.
4	Authentication Source	After negotiating an authentication method with the user, Policy Manager authenticates the user (in order of priority) against the authentication sources defined in the Policy Manager service.
5	Role Mapping	Any roles defined in role-mapping policies or automatically assigned by Policy Manager based on several sources of information, including RADIUS connection control attributes, authentication sources, or authorization attributes.
6	Enforcement Policy	An enforcement policy is a way to organize enforcement profiles and apply them to users or Policy Manager roles. Based on the enforcement policy assigned to the role, enforcement profiles are applied to the service request.
7	Enforcement Profile	Enforcement profiles are the building blocks that control network access and define types of access. Multiple enforcement profiles can be used in an enforcement policy.

For a detailed description of the EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPV2 process, refer to <u>EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2 Handshake</u> Exchange Summary on page 191.

Creating the 802.1X Wireless Service

The 802.1X Wireless Service provides a method for wireless end-hosts connecting through an 802.1X wireless access device or mobility controller, with authentication using IEEE 802.1X and with service rules customized for Mobility Controllers.

This W-ClearPass 802.1X template guides you through the following tasks:

• Selecting an Active Directory Authentication Source.

This guide assumes that the Active Directory Authentication Source has already been configured. For details, see <u>Preparing for Active Directory Authentication</u>.

• Selecting a Mobility Controller.

This guide assumes that the mobility controller to be used for 802.1X authentication has already been configured. For details, see <u>Preparing the Mobility Controller for W-ClearPass Policy Manager Integration</u>.

Creating an Enforcement Policy for Active Directory-based attributes.
 The procedure for creating an Enforcement Policy is described in this section.

To create the 802.1X wireless service:

 From W-ClearPass Policy Manager, navigate to Configuration > Start Here > Aruba 802.1x Wireless. The General page for the W-ClearPass 802.1X Wireless Service template opens.



ClearPass Policy Manager			Support Help Logout admin (Super Administrator)	
Configuration » Start Here				
Service Templates -	Aruba 802.1X Wireles	S		
General Authentication	Wireless Network Settings	Posture Settings	Enforcement Details	
Name Prefix*:	ollege AD			
Description				
For wireless end-hosts connecting through an Aruba 802.11 wireless access device or controller, with authentication via IEEE 802.1X (Service rules customized fpr Aruba WLAN Mobility Controllers). This template configures an AD Authentication Source; joins this node to the AD Domain; creates Enforcement Policy for AD based attributes; and creates an Aruba Network Access Device.				
<back here<="" start="" td="" to=""><td></td><th></th><td>De</td><td>lete Next > Add Service Cancel</td></back>			De	lete Next > Add Service Cancel

- 2. In the *Name Prefix* field, enter a prefix that is appended to services using this template, then click **Next**. The **Authentication** page is displayed.
- 3. From the **Select Authentication Source** drop-down list, select the name of the Active Directory, as shown in Figure 112, then click **Next**.

Figure 112 Selecting the Active Directory

ClearPass Policy Manager Support Help Log admin (Super Administration						ort <u>Help</u> <u>Logout</u> min (Super Administrator)
Configuration » Start He	re					
Service Templat	es -	Aruba 802.1X Wire	eless			
General Authentic	ation	Wireless Network Setti	ngs	Posture Settings	Enforcement Details	s
Select Authentication Sc	ource:	✓ Create a new Active Directory	Ð			
Create an Active Dir	rector	[Admin User Repository]				
Active Directory Name*	:	[Endpoints Repository]				
Description:		[Guest Device Repository] [Guest User Repository] [Insight Repository]		le		
Server*:		[Local User Repository]				
Port*:	389	[Onboard Devices Repository]	or secur	e connection, use p	ort 636)	
Identity*:	cn=a	administrator, cn=users, dc=e	xample,d	(e.g., adminis c=com)	trator@example.com Ol	۲
Password*:						
NETBIOS*:						
Base DN*:				(e.g., CN=Use	rs,DC=example,DC=ex	ample,DC=com)
< Back to Start Here					Delete	ext > Add Service Cancel

When you choose an existing Authentication Source, the information in the **Authentication** and **Enforcement Details** pages is populated automatically.

The Wireless Network Settings page appears.

4. Select the mobility controller you defined earlier (for details, see <u>Preparing the Mobility Controller for W-</u> <u>ClearPass Policy Manager Integration</u>). Figure 113 Selecting the Mobility Controller

	i <u>Help</u> <u>Logout</u> n (Super Administrator)				
Configuration » Start Here					
Service Templates	Service Templates - Aruba 802.1X Wireless				
General Authenticat	ion Wireless Network Settings	Posture Settings	Enforcement Details		
Select a wireless cont	roller from the list, or create a new	/ one			
Select wireless controller:	Aruba3400 \$				
Wireless Controller Name:	Aruba3400				
Controller IP Address:	10.162.114.2				
Vendor Name:	Aruba 🛟				
RADIUS Shared Secret:					
Enable RADIUS CoA:					
RADIUS CoA Port: 3799					
Seack to Start Here Delete Next > Add Service Cancel					

The fields in the **Wireless Network Settings** page are automatically populated with the selected mobility controller's configuration information.

5. Click Next.

The **Posture Settings** page appears.

Figure 114 Enabling Posture Checks

ClearPass Policy Manager Support Help L admin (Super Administ					
Configuration » Start Here					
Service Templates - Aruba 802.1X Wireless	Service Templates - Aruba 802.1X Wireless				
General Authentication Wireless Network Settings	Posture Settings Enforcement Details				
Enable Posture Checks to perform health checks after authentication.					
Enable Posture Checks to perform health checks after auth	nentication.				
Enable Posture Checks to perform health checks after auth Enable Posture Checks:	nentication.				

W-ClearPass Policy Manager performs automated endpoint health checks and posture assessments to ensure that devices are compliant before they connect to mobile networks.

6. To enable posture checks to be performed after the authentication process completes, click the **Enable Posture Checks** check box, then click **Next**.

The **Enforcement Details** page appears.

Figure 115 shows an example of a new Enforcement Policy, with three attributes defined:

- If **memberOf** equals **Faculty**, then assign Role **Faculty**.
- If memberOf equals Students, then assign Role Students.
- If **memberOf** equals **Contractors**, then assign Role **Contractors**.

Figure 115 Creating a New Enforcement Policy

	ClearPass Policy Manager adm					i <u>Help</u> <u>Logout</u> n (Super Administrator)
Cor	Configuration » Start Here					
Se	ervice Templates -	A	ruba 802.1X Wireless	5		
G	eneral Authentication		Wireless Network Settings	Posture Settings	Enforcement Details	
(Create a new Enforceme	nt P	olicy			
At	tribute Name		Attribute Value	Aruba Role		
If	memberOf	\$	equals Faculty	then assign Ro	Faculty	
If	memberOf	\$	equals Students	then assign Ro	le Student	
If	memberOf	\$	equals Contractors	then assign Ro	Contractors	
De	fault Role*:				Guest	
<	Back to Start Here				Delete	Add Service Cancel

 Table 20: Enforcement Policy Configuration Settings

Parameter	Action/Description
Attribute Name	 The attributes defined in the Authentication Source are listed here. 1. Configure an optional enforcement policy based on the following attributes: Department Email Name Phone Title UserDN company member of
Attribute Value	2. Enter the Active Directory attribute value for the selected name in the <i>Attribute Name</i> field.
Aruba Role	 3. Assign a user role to the Enforcement Policy. The configured user roles are defined in the mobility controllerspecified for this service. To see the list of configured user roles defined in the mobility controller: a. Log in to the Mobility Controller. b. Navigate to Configuration > SECURITY > Access Control. The User Roles page is displayed.

This completes the base configuration for a new 802.1X Wireless Service.

4. Click Add Service.

An entry for the new set of configurations is created under the Services, Roles, Role Mapping, Enforcement Policies, and Profiles menus.

A summary for the 802.X service you configured is displayed.

Config	uratio	on » Servic	es			
Serv	vice	S				📌 Add 🏝 Import 🏝 Export All
			 Added 5 Enfo Added 1 Enfo Added 1 serv 	rcement Profile(s) rcement Policies ice(s)		
Filter	Nar	me	¢ contains ¢	+	Go Clear Filter	Show 10 + records
#		Order 🛦	Name	Туре	Template	Status
1.		1	[Policy Manager Admin Network Login Service]	TACACS	TACACS+ Enforcement	•
2.		2	[AirGroup Authorization Service]	RADIUS	RADIUS Enforcement (Generic	:) \varTheta
3.		3	[Aruba Device Access Service]	TACACS	TACACS+ Enforcement	۲
4.		4	[Guest Operator Logins]	Application	Aruba Application Authentication	on 😑
5.	0	5	College AD Aruba 802.1X Wireless	RADIUS	Aruba 802.1X Wireless	•
	Show	ving 1-5 of	5		Reorder	Copy Export Delete

Figure 116 Summary of the 802.1X Service Configuration

Deleting a W-ClearPass Policy Manager Service

You can only delete W-ClearPass services that have been created by an administrator. Default services cannot be deleted.

To delete a W-ClearPass Policy Manager service:

1. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Services**.

The **Configuration** > **Services** page opens.

Figure 117 Deleting a W-ClearPass Service



2. Select the appropriate service's check box, then click **Delete**.

All the configured entries under the Services, Authentication Source, Roles, Role Mapping, Enforcement Policies, and Profiles menus are deleted (if these entities were created from the Service Template).



Do not delete entities used in service configurations that were not created using the Service Template.

Walking Through an 802.1X Authentication Scenario

This section shows the for 802.1X authentication traffic flow for wireless and wired authentication scenarios and provides a typical example of the 802.1X authentication process.

802.1X Wireless Authentication Traffic Flow

Figure 118 shows the flow of traffic for 802.1X authentication using Active Directory.





Walking Through the 802.1X Authentication Process

Let's use an example to walk through the authentication process as illustrated in Figure 118.

1. A Sales Department employee connects to the Dell wireless network from his laptop and an 802.1X EAP-PEAP authentication process begins automatically.

EAP-PEAP (Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol) is the protocol used to communicate between the client and the network device, in this case, a mobility controller.

- 2. The client's authentication request is sent to the mobility controller.
- 3. When the mobility controller receives the authentication request, it sends a RADIUS access-request packet to the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server with the encrypted username and password.

RADIUS is the protocol that network access device (NAD) authenticators use to communicate with the W-ClearPass server in order to look up the information in the RADIUS database, which in this example is Active Directory.

4. The W-ClearPass Policy Manager server checks the Active Directory database for a matching username and password.

The communication between the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server and Active Directory is via NTLM (NT LAN Manager) for authentication in conjunction with LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) for search and directory lookup.

- If there is not a match, the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server sends an access-reject message to the mobility controller.
- If there is a match, the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server sends an *access-accept* message to the mobility controller, and the user is granted access to the network.

User Role Attribute Information

The W-ClearPass Policy Manager server can also send attribute information about the user (for example, User Role) to the mobility controller. In this example, the server uses the User Role attribute, which indicates that the user is in the Sales Department.

The mobility controller applies a Sales Department firewall role to this user's traffic. Typically for such a role, the firewall rule applied would be *IP any permit*, which permits all IP traffic.

802.1X Wired Authentication Traffic Flow

This same process applies to wired clients that connect to a Mobility Access Switch (MAS) or a third-party switch and perform 802.1X authentication to the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server (see Figure 119).





For more information about the Dell Mobility Access Switch and 802.1X authentication, see <u>Mobility Access</u> Switch Configuration for 802.1X Authentication on page 165.

Troubleshooting 802.1X Configuration Issues

This section provides information on troubleshooting potential trouble spots when configuring Active Directory and the Mobility Controller.

Active Directory Authentication Source Configuration Issues

- 1. If you have configured a hostname instead of an IP address for Active Directory server in the **Server** field (see), ensure that the Active Directory hostname is resolved by the Domain Name System (DNS).
- 2. Ensure the Bind DN credentials have read access to the Active Directory locations where users and computers are present.
- 3. Verify that the username used for Bind DN is not locked in the Active Directory.
- 4. While joining W-ClearPass to the Active Directory domain, use the *Fully Qualified Domain Name* (FQDN) of the Active Directory host and not just the Domain Name.
- 5. Verify that the W-ClearPass server's time is synchronized with the Active Directory, as a clock skew will cause the join domain operation to fail (for details, see <u>Confirming the Date and Time Are in Sync on page 94</u>).



The maximum allowed clock skew between the W-ClearPass server and the Active Directory server is five minutes.

Mobility Controller Configuration Issues

- 1. Ensure that the Role information that was sent to the mobility controller via enforcement matches the role defined in the mobility controller.
- 2. If authentication requests are not visible in the Access Tracker, verify the following:
 - a. Verify the shared secret in the mobility controller and W-ClearPass Policy Manager's Network Access Device configuration. Shared secret errors are shown in the W-ClearPass Policy Manager Event Viewer.
 - b. Ensure that the mobility controller's IP address is configured correctly in W-ClearPass Policy Manager.

Any mismatch will show ERROR/WARN events in the Event Viewer stating that an authentication request is received from an unknown IP address.

Chapter 5 Deploying W-ClearPass Clusters

This chapter includes the following information:

- <u>W-ClearPass Cluster Overview</u>
- Cluster Design Considerations
- About Large Scale Deployments
- Deploying the Standby Publisher
- Adding a Subscriber Node to the Publisher
- <u>Rejoining a Down Node to the Cluster</u>
- Deploying W-ClearPass Insight in a Cluster
- <u>Configuring Cluster File-Backup Servers</u>
- Using High Capacity Guest Mode
- Cluster CLI Commands

W-ClearPass Cluster Overview

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- <u>W-ClearPass Databases</u>
- Publisher/Subscriber Model
- Network Ports That Must Be Enabled
- <u>Cluster Scaling Limitations</u>

Introduction

A cluster is a logical connection of any combination of W-ClearPass hardware or virtual appliances.

This chapter provides guidance on how to design and deploy W-ClearPass Policy Manager clusters, how to complete major tasks such as adding a Subscriber node and deploying a standby Publisher, as well as how to rejoin a down node to the cluster and enable and use High Capacity Guest Mode. Finally, the set of cluster-specific CLI commands is included.

W-ClearPass Policy Manager can be deployed either as a dedicated hardware appliance or a virtual machine running on top of VMware ESX/ESXi or Microsoft Hyper-V. W-ClearPass supports a 500, 5,000, or a 25,000 endpoints hardware or virtual appliance. For more information on the Dell hardware and virtual appliances, refer to About W-ClearPass on page 11.

When you deploy W-ClearPass in High Guest Capacity mode, the node can support 1,000, 10,000 and 50,000 guests per day. For more information, see <u>Using High Capacity Guest Mode on page 157</u>.

When demand exceeds the capacity of a single instance, or you have a requirement for a High Availability deployment, you have the option of logically joining multiple instances to process the workload from the network.

You can logically join physical and virtual instances and also join W-ClearPass instances that are dissimilar in size. However, careful planning must be taken, especially if you plan to utilize the failover capabilities within the clustering feature.

The cluster feature allows for shared configuration and databases. However, it does not provide a virtual IP address for the cluster, so failover/redundancy for captive portal for Guest relies on Domain Name System (DNS) lookup or load balancing.

RADIUS clients must define a primary and backup RADIUS server.

Authentication Requests in a Cluster

The typical use case for Policy Manager is to process authentication requests using the policy framework. The policy framework is a selection of services that work to process authentication requests, but the policy framework also determines authentication, authorization, posture, enforcement, role, etc. of the endpoint/end-user.

In the context of cluster operations, authentication typically involves a read-only operation from the configuration database. A cluster node receives an authentication request, determines the appropriate policies to apply, and responds appropriately. This does not require a configuration change, and can therefore be scaled across the entire cluster.



Authentication is performed from the node itself to the configured identity store, whether locally (as synchronized by the Publisher, for example, a Guest account) or externally, such as with Microsoft Active Directory.

Logs relevant to each authentication request are recorded separately on each node, using that node's log database. Centralized reporting is handled by generating a Netevent from the node, which is sent to all Insight nodes and recorded in the Insight database (for related information, see <u>Deploying W-ClearPass Insight in a</u> <u>Cluster on page 152</u>).

W-ClearPass Databases

Each W-ClearPass server makes use of the following databases:

- **Configuration database**. Contains most of the editable entries that can be seen in the W-ClearPass user interface. This includes, but is not limited to:
 - Administrative user accounts
 - Local user accounts
 - Service definitions
 - Role definitions
 - Enforcement policies and profiles
 - Network access devices
 - Guest accounts
 - Onboard certificates
 - Most of the configuration shown within Guest and Onboard
- **Log database**. Contains activity logs generated by typical usage of the system. This includes information shown in Access Tracker and the Event Viewer.
- Insight database. Records historical information generated by the Netevents framework. This database is
 used to generate reports (for related information, see <u>Deploying W-ClearPass Insight in a Cluster on page</u>
 152).

Publisher/Subscriber Model

W-ClearPass uses a Publisher/Subscriber model to provide multiple-box clustering. Another term for this model is *hub and spoke*, where the hub corresponds to the Publisher, and the spokes correspond to the Subscribers.





- The **Publisher node** functions as the master controller in a cluster. The Publisher is your central point of configuration, monitoring, and reporting. It is also the central point of database replication. All the databases are managed through the Publisher.
 - There is at most one active Publisher in this model, and a potentially unlimited number of Subscribers.
 - The Publisher node has full read/write access to the configuration database. All configuration changes must be made on the Publisher. The Publisher node sends configuration changes to each Subscriber.
- The **Subscriber nodes** are worker nodes. All the AAA load, all RADIUS requests, and the node where policy decisions are being made are on the Subscriber nodes.
 - Subscriber nodes maintain a local copy of the configuration database, and each Subscriber has readonly access to a local copy of the configuration database.

Network Address Translation (NAT) is not supported between the Publisher and Subscriber nodes.

What Information Is Replicated?

A background replication process handles the task of updating the configuration database based on the configuration changes received from the Publisher.

Multiple entities exist within a CPPM cluster that must be shared to ensure successful operation of the cluster. Only the configuration database is replicated.



The Log and Insight databases are not replicated across the cluster.

However, certain elements are node-specific and these must be configured separately for each node, which you can achieve directly on the Publisher or individually on the Subscriber node.

Elements Replicated

Cluster replication is delta-based; that is, only changed information is replicated.

The cluster elements that are replicated across all the nodes in the cluster are as follows:

- All policy configuration elements
- All audit data
- All identity store data
 - Guest accounts, endpoints, and profile data
- Runtime information
 - Authorization status, posture status, and roles
 - Connectivity information, NAS details
- Database replication on port 5432 over SSL
- Runtime replication on port 443 over SSL

Elements Not Replicated

The following elements are not replicated:

- Access Tracker logs and Session logs
- Authentication records
- Accounting records
- System events (Event Viewer data)
- System monitoring data

Network Ports That Must Be Enabled

Table 21 lists the network ports that must be opened between the Publisher and the Subscriber nodes.

Port	Protocol	Description
80	НТТР	Internal proxy
123	UDP	TNTP: Time synchronization
443	ТСР	HTTPS: Internal proxy and node-to-node service
5432	ТСР	PostgreSQL: Database replication

Table 21: Network Ports to Be Enabled

Because any Subscriber node can be promoted to be the Publisher node, all port/protocol combinations listed in Table 21 should be:

- Bidirectional
- Open between any two nodes in the cluster

Cluster Scaling Limitations

Due to the design requirements of the cluster Publisher/Subscriber model, various W-ClearPass components scale differently (see <u>Table 22</u>).

Table	22:	W-ClearPass	Cluster	Scaling	Limitations
-------	-----	-------------	---------	---------	-------------

Component	Scaling Limitation
Authentication capacity	Scales linearly according to the number of Subscriber nodes. Add more nodes as necessary to provide additional capacity to service authentication requests.
Configuration changes (Guest/ Onboard)	These configuration changes do not scale with additional nodes as they are centralized. Requires the Publisher be scaled to support write traffic from the maximum number of Subscribers that would be active concurrently.
Configuration changes (Policy Manager)	As the total size of the configuration set is bounded, these configuration changes are assumed to be infrequent and therefore not a significant limit to scaling.
Insight reports	Because this function is centralized, reporting does not scale with additional nodes. Use a separate Insight node sufficient to handle the incoming Netevents traffic from all nodes in the cluster. In a very large-scale deployment, the Publisher node should not be used as the Insight reporting node.
Logging capacity	Scales linearly according to the number of Subscriber nodes, as each node handles its own logging operations.
Replication load on publisher	Scales linearly according to the number of Subscriber nodes. The replication is efficient as only changed information is sent.

Cluster Design Considerations

This section contains the following information:

- Cluster Deployment Sizing Guidance
- Publisher Node Guidelines
- Subscriber Node Guidelines
- Providing Sufficient Bandwidth Between Publisher and Subscribers
- RTT Considerations When Building Geographically Distributed Clusters
- Implementing W-ClearPass Zones for Geographical Regions

This section contains recommendations on how to optimize the Publisher and Subscriber constraints when deploying a W-ClearPass cluster.

Cluster Deployment Sizing Guidance

The maximum single cluster size is limited to 30 nodes.

Cluster deployment sizing should not be based on raw performance numbers.

To determine the optimum sizing for a W-ClearPass cluster:

- 1. Determine how many endpoints need to be authenticated.
 - a. The number of authenticating endpoints can be determined by taking the number of users times the number of devices per user.
 - b. To this total, add the other endpoints that just perform MAC authentication, such as printers and other non-authenticating endpoints.
- 2. Take into account the following factors:
 - a. Number and type of authentications and authorizations:
 - MAC authentication/authorizations vs. PAP vs. EAP-MSCHAPv2 vs. PEAP-MSCHAPv2 vs. PEAP-GTC vs. EAP-TLS
 - Active Directory vs. local database vs. external SQL datastore
 - No posture assessment vs. in-band posture assessment in the PEAP tunnel vs. HTTPS-based posture assessment done by OnGuard.
 - b. RADIUS accounting load.
 - c. Operational tasks taking place during authentications, such as configuration activities, administrative tasks, replication load, periodic report generation, and so on.
 - d. Disk space consumed.

Note that W-ClearPass Policy Manager writes copious amounts of data for each transaction (this data is displayed in the Access Tracker).

3. Then pick the number of W-ClearPass hardware appliances you would need, with redundancy ranging from (N+1) to full redundancy, depending on the needs of the customer.

EAP-TLS Performance

EAP-TLS raw performance on a W-ClearPass 25K class hardware appliance without any authorization source configured can be as high as 300 authentications per second, with an average latency of around 300 ms (with the CPU running at 50%).

EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPv2 Performance

EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPv2 raw performance on a W-ClearPass 25K class hardware, with Active Directory-based authentication and authorization, can be as high as 400 authentications per second, with an average latency of around 300 ms (with the CPU running at 50%).

Publisher Node Guidelines

Setting Up a Standby Publisher

W-ClearPassPolicy Manager allows you to designate one of the Subscriber nodes in a cluster to be the *Standby Publisher*, thereby providing for that Subscriber node to be automatically promoted to active Publisher status in the event that the Publisher goes out of service. This ensures that any service degradation is limited to an absolute minimum. For details, see Deploying the Standby Publisher on page 144.

Publisher Node Sizing

The Publisher node must be sized appropriately because it handles database write operations from all Subscribers simultaneously.

The Publisher must also be capable of handling the total-number of endpoints within the cluster and be capable of processing remote work directed to it when guest-account creation and onboarding are occurring.

Publisher Deployment Guidance

- In a world-wide large-scale deployment, not all Subscriber nodes are equally busy. To determine the maximum request rate that must be handled by the Publisher node, examine the cluster's traffic pattern for busy hours and estimate the traffic load for each Subscriber node, adjusting for time zone differences.
- In a large-scale deployment, isolate the Publisher node, to allow it to handle the maximum amount of traffic possible.
- To help reduce the maximum amount of traffic possible in a large-scale deployment (ignoring API requests from Subscribers as well as the outbound replication traffic to Subscribers), the Publisher should not receive any authentication requests or Guest/Onboard requests directly.
- If the worker traffic sent from the Subscriber nodes is expected to fully saturate the capacity of the Publisher node, Insight should not be enabled on the Publisher node. If the Publisher node has spare capacity, it can be used to support the W-ClearPass Insight database. However, take care to carefully monitor the Publisher node's capacity and performance.
- <u>Table 23</u> shows the recommended Publisher node disposition that should be deployed given the number and type of Subscribers in the cluster.

Subscriber Nodes	Publisher Disposition		
CP-HW-500 Subscriber Nodes			
4 or less CP-HW-500 Subscriber nodes	Dedicated CP-HW-500 Publisher pair		
5 to 20 CP-HW-500 Subscriber nodes NOTE: Assumes less than 4,000 unique endpoints.	Dedicated CP-HW-5K Publisher pair		
21+ CP-HW-500 Subscriber nodes	Dedicated CP-HW-25K Publisher pair		
CP-HW-5K Subscriber Nodes			
4 or fewer CP-HW-5K Subscriber nodes	Dedicated CP-HW-5K Publisher pair		
5+ CP-HW-5K Subscriber nodes	Dedicated CP-HW-25K Publisher pair		
CP-HW-25K Subscriber Nodes			
Up to 10 CP-HW-25K Subscriber nodes	Dedicated CP-HW-25K Publisher pair		

Table 23: Subscriber and Publisher Deployment Matrix

Subscriber Node Guidelines

Using Nearest Subscriber Node

Guests and Onboard clients should be directed to the nearest Subscriber node. From the client's point of view, the internal API call to the Publisher is handled transparently. The best response time for static resources is obtained if the server is nearby.

Using Subscriber Nodes as Workers

Subscriber nodes should be used as workers that process the following:

- Authentication requests (for example, RADIUS, TACACS+, Web-Auth)
- Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) requests
- Static content delivery (for example, images, CSS, JavaScript)

Avoid sending "worker traffic" to the Publisher, as the Publisher services API requests from Subscribers, handles the resulting database writes, and generates replication changes to send back to the Subscribers.

If Onboard is used, ensure that the EAP-TLS authentication method in Policy Manager is configured to perform *localhost* OCSP checks.

Providing Sufficient Bandwidth Between Publisher and Subscribers

In a large-scale deployment, reduced bandwidth or high latency on the link (greater than 200ms) delivers a lower-quality user experience for all users of that Subscriber, even though static content is delivered locally almost instantaneously.

For reliable operation of each Subscriber, ensure that there is sufficient bandwidth available for communications with the Publisher. For basic authentication operations, there is no specific requirement for high bandwidth. However, the number of round-trips to complete an EAP authentication could cause delay for the end user.

Traffic Flows Between Publisher and Subscriber

The traffic flows between the Publisher and Subscriber nodes include:

Basic monitoring of the cluster

Monitoring operations generate a small amount of traffic.

- Time synchronization for clustering Generates standard Network Time Protocol (NTP) traffic.
- Policy Manager configuration changes
 Not a significant consumer of bandwidth.
- Multi-Master Cache

The amount of traffic depends on the authentication load and other details of the deployment. Cached information is metadata and is not large. This data is replicated only within the Policy Manager zone.

- Guest/Onboard dynamic content proxy requests
 This is essentially a web page and averages approximately 100KB.
- Guest/Onboard configuration changes
 Only the changes to the database configuration are sent, and this information is typically small in size (approximately 10KB).

RTT Considerations When Building Geographically Distributed Clusters

It's important to take the delay between a W-ClearPass Policy Manager server and a NAD/NAS (a controller or switch) into consideration when building geographically distributed clusters.

In a large geographically dispersed cluster, the worst case round-trip time (RTT) between a NAS /NAD and all potential nodes in the cluster that might handle authentication is a design consideration.

- Dell recommends that the round-trip time between the NAD/NAS and a W-ClearPass server should not exceed 600ms.
- The acceptable delay between cluster nodes is less than 50ms (RTT less than 100ms).

• The link bandwidth should be greater than 10Mbps.

It's possible to configure a NAD/NAS to point at multiple RADIUS servers, either for load balancing or failover.

For example, a NAD/NAS in Paris could point to a W-ClearPass Policy Manager server in London as a backup RADIUS server. That's not a problem as long at the round-trip time guidelines are adhered to.

Implementing W-ClearPass Zones for Geographical Regions

W-ClearPass zones exist to control the replication of information between nodes in a cluster. Included in this control is the replication of the *Multi-Master Cache* (MMC), which contains the endpoints' run-time state information.

The Multi-Master Cache is replicated across all nodes in a zone—not all nodes in the cluster. If zoning has not been configured, traffic flows between the Publisher and Subscriber as well as between all the Subscribers in the cluster.

The run-time state information includes:

- Roles and postures of the connected entities
- Connection status of all endpoints running OnGuard
- Machine authentication state
- Session information used for Change of Authorization (CoA)
- Information about which endpoints are on which NAS/NAD

W-ClearPass uses run-time state information to make policy decisions across multiple transactions.

In a deployment where a cluster spans WAN boundaries and multiple geographic zones, it's not necessary to share run-time state information across all the nodes in the cluster.

For example, endpoints present in one geographical area are not likely to authenticate or be present in another area. It's therefore more efficient from a network usage and processing perspective to restrict the sharing of such run-time state information to a specific geographical area.

Certain cached information is replicated only on the servers within a Policy Manager zone. In a large-scale deployment with multiple geographical areas, multiple zones should be used to reduce the amount of data that needs to be replicated over a wide-area network.

Zones and the Persistent Agent

A persistent agent attempts to establish communications with a W-ClearPass server in the same zone; if that is not possible, it contacts a server in another zone.

Zone configurations allow for fairly deterministic control of where the persistent agent will send its health information. At minimum, the agent health information should go to a node in the same zone as the authentication request.

From a design perspective, for large geographically dispersed deployments, the design goal should be for agent health information and authentication requests to be sent to the same cluster node. Targeting authentication requests to a specific node is easily accomplished with NAS configuration.

Creating Geographical Zones in Policy Manager

You can configure zones in W-ClearPass Policy Manager to match with the geographical areas in your deployment. You can define multiple zones per cluster. Each zone has a number of W-ClearPass Policy Manager nodes that share their runtime state.

To create geographical zones in Policy Manager:

1. Navigate to the **Administration** > **Server Manager** > **Server Configuration** page.

Figure 121 Manage Policy Manager Zones Link

Administration » Server Manager » Server Configuration						
Server Configuration	1			 Set Date Change Manage NetEven Virtual IF Clear Ma Make Su Cluster-W 	: & Time Cluster Passwor Policy Manager ts Targets Settings chine Authentic bscriber Wide Parameter	rd Zones ation Cache s
# Server Name △	Management Port	Data Port	Zone	Profile	Cluster Sync	Last Sync Time
1. NIGHTLY-CPPM-31	10.	-	default	Enabled	Enabled	-

Collect Logs Backup Restore Cleanup Shutdown

2. Click the Manage Policy Manager Zones link.

The Policy Manager Zones dialog appears.

3. Select Click to add....

Showing 1-1 of 1

A blank field appears in the dialog.

Figure 122 Adding a Policy Manager Zone

Policy Manager Zones	8
Name	a
1. default	童
2. West_Coast 💌	to the second se
3. Click to add	
	Save Close

- 4. Enter the name of the new Policy Manager zone.
- 5. To create additional Policy Manager zones, repeat Steps 3 and 4.
- 6. When finished, click **Save**.

You see the message, "Policy Manager Zones modified successfully."

Policy Manager Zone Deployment Guidance

Guidance for deploying Policy Manager zones is as follows:

- 1. In a large-scale deployment, create one Policy Manager zone for each major geographical area of the deployment.
- 2. To handle RADIUS authentication traffic in each region, configure the region's networking devices with the Policy Manager nodes in the same zone.
- 3. If additional authentication servers are required for backup, you can specify one or more Policy Manager servers located in a different zone, but Dellrecommends that you deploy remote servers that have the best connection, that is, the lowest latency, highest bandwidth, and highest reliability.
- 4. There may be cases in which the RADIUS server on the network infrastructure is configured to use remote W-ClearPass server nodes that are outside of their primary geographic area.

In this scenario, the replication of the runtime states might be relevant. Consider this behavior during the design and deployment of a distributed cluster of W-ClearPass server nodes.

About Large Scale Deployments

This section contains the following information:

- What Is a Large Scale Deployment?
- Design Guidelines
- Examples of Customer Cluster Deployments

What Is a Large Scale Deployment?

Large-scale deployments are defined as those clusters that require the Publisher node to be dedicated to servicing the Subscriber nodes.

This occurs when the volume of configuration changes generated by all the Subscribers in the cluster limits the Publisher node's capacity to handle other important tasks, such as authentication.

Note that not every clustering scenario is a large-scale deployment. CPPM clustering can also be performed for other reasons, for example, to distribute several CPPM nodes geographically for policy reasons, or to have an off-site disaster recovery system.

Design Guidelines

The dedicated Publisher should be a W-ClearPass 25K hardware appliance (CP-HW-25K) or a W-ClearPass 25K Virtual Appliance (CP-VM-25K) that matches the minimum specification for the CP-VM-25K virtual appliance:

Component	Specification
CPUs	24 Virtual CPUs
Hard disk	1024 GB hard disk
RAM	64 GB RAM
Switched ports	2 Gigabit virtual switched ports
Functional IOP rating	360 NOTE: For a 40-60 read/write profile for 4K random read/write

Table 24: W-ClearPass 25K Virtual Appliance Minimum Specifications

- Configuration changes that should be considered in the context of a large-scale deployment include:
 - Creating, modifying, or deleting a guest account.
 - Issuing or revoking an Onboard certificate.
 - Modifying Policy Manager configuration; for example, adding a network access device, defining a new service, and updating an enforcement profile).
 - Adding new endpoints (including automatically created endpoints) in Policy Manager.
 - Making modifications to guest accounts or endpoint records with a PPolicy Manager postauthentication profile.

Examples of Customer Cluster Deployments

This section provides two examples of typical customer cluster deployments.

Authenticating Corporate Users with Guest Access

In this example, a cluster of W-ClearPass 5K hardware appliances (CP-HW-5K) has two nodes—U.S. East Coast and U.S. West Coast (see Figure 123).

- US-West is the Publisher.
- US-East is the Subscriber.
- Each node handles the authentication traffic for 2,000 corporate endpoints. Each node also registers 100 guests per day.
- There are few configuration updates in the network.

In this example, each node could be used as the backup for the other node. In the event of a node failure, the other node could handle the authentication requirements of all 4,000 endpoints in addition to 200 guest registrations per day.





This fictitious customer example would not be considered a large-scale cluster deployment, for the following reasons:

- The additional load on the Publisher due to clustering can be estimated at 100 guest accounts created per day.
- The authentication traffic on the Subscriber node does not impose any additional load on the Publisher and the new endpoints registered (in the order of 100 per day, assuming new guests each day) does also not add any significant load.
- The workload on the Publisher is small and represents a fraction of its capacity.

Authenticating Conference Center Users

In this example, the cluster has three W-ClearPass 25K hardware appliance nodes (CP-HW-25) in the same timezone (see <u>Figure 124</u>).

- These nodes are located in San Jose (Publisher), San Diego (Subscriber), and Seattle (Subscriber).
- Each node can register up to 15,000 guests per day, often in short bursts.
- There is constant authentication traffic through the day from the onsite employees and guest.
- On some days, a node may be idle, but there are days where all nodes are busy.

Figure 124 Example of a Large-Scale Cluster Deployment



The cluster illustrated in Figure 124 would be considered a large-scale deployment, for the following reasons:

- The maximum potential load on the Publisher due to the Guest account creation process can be estimated at 45,000 guest accounts created per hour (peak rate). That equates to 12.5 account creations per second, with a maximum of 15 accounts created per second.
- This is a significant load on the Publisher.

Recommendation

In this example, a separate dedicated Publisher node would be recommended: a W-ClearPass 25K hardware appliance (CP-HW-25K).

The W-ClearPass 25K hardware appliance can handle up to 54,000 guest accounts being created per hour (15 per second), but with bursts of guest traffic that are unpredictable during the peak hours.

With the additional Publisher load of the replication of these accounts to each of the Subscriber nodes, this is an example of a deployment warranting a dedicated Publisher.

Deploying the Standby Publisher

This section contains the following information:

- Setting Up the Standby Publisher
- <u>About the Fail-Over Process</u>
- Mitigation Strategies
- Virtual IP Address Considerations
- Functions Lost When the Publisher Is Down

Setting Up the Standby Publisher

W-ClearPass Policy Manager allows you to designate one of the subscriber nodes in a cluster to be the *Standby Publisher*, thereby providing for that subscriber node to be automatically promoted to active Publisher status in the event that the Publisher goes out of service. This ensures that any service degradation is limited to an absolute minimum.

During the period when a cluster does not have an active Publisher, some functions across the cluster are not available, such as being able to create guest accounts (for details, see <u>Functions Lost When the Publisher Is</u> Down).



Before you can designate a W-ClearPass Policy Manager node as a Standby Publisher, the designated node must be in a cluster.

The Standby Publisher can function as a fully operational subscriber node. However, in a large cluster deployment, the Publisher and Standby Publisher might need to be dedicated nodes, in which case the Standby Publisher will not be available to handle authentication requests.

If the Standby Publisher is on a different subnet than the Publisher, ensure that a reliable connection between the two subnets is established. This avoids network segmentation and potential data loss from a false failover.

To designate and configure the Standby Publisher:

 From the node to be designated the Standby Publisher, navigate to Administration > Server Manager > Server Configuration > Cluster-Wide Parameters > Standby Publisher.

Figure 125	Standby Publisher	Dialog
------------	-------------------	--------

Cluster-Wide Parameters			8
General Cleanup Intervals	Notifications Standby Publisher	Virtual IP Configuration M	ode Database
Parameter Name	Pa	rameter Value	Default Value
Enable Publisher Failover	F/	ALSE 💌	FALSE
Designated Standby Publisher			0
Failover Wait Time	10) minutes	10
		Restore Defau	lts Save Cancel

2. Configure the **Standby Publisher** parameters as described in <u>Table 25</u>.



144 | Deploying W-ClearPass Clusters
Table 25: Configuring Standby Publisher Parameters

Parameter	Action/Description
Enable Publisher Failover	 To authorize a node in a cluster on the system to act as a Publisher if the primary Publisher fails, select TRUE. The default value is FALSE.
Designated Standby Publisher	2. From the drop-down, select the CPPM server in the cluster that will serve as the Standby Publisher.
Failover Wait Time	3. Specify the time (in minutes) for which the secondary node waits after the primary node fails before it acquires a virtual IP address. The default failover wait time is 10 minutes, 5 minutes being the minimum value you can select before the Standby Publisher begins to promote itself to an active state. This prevents the secondary node from taking over when the primary node is temporarily unavailable during restart.
	4. When finished, click Save .

About the Fail-Over Process

The Standby Publisher health-checks the primary Publisher every 60 seconds by making an SQL call to the active Publisher. If this SQL call fails, after ten additional attempts (one per minute), the Standby Publisher begins the process of promoting itself to be the active Publisher.

The process used to verify the reachability of the remote W-ClearPassPolicy Manager nodes uses an outbound HTTPS call. As noted in <u>Network Ports That Must Be Enabled on page 134</u>, port 443/TCP must be open between all the nodes in the cluster. Utilizing this HTTPS health check provides for a more robust and predictable failover process.

When a Publisher failure is detected, the designated subscriber node is promoted to active Publisher status. The other subscriber nodes automatically update and replicate their configuration with the new Publisher, which resolves the issue.

Mitigation Strategies

The recommended mitigation strategies for deploying a Standby Publisher are as follows:

• Use a virtual IP address for the Publisher.

Doing so reduces the potential for a prolonged service outage while the active Publisher is out of service or promoting the Standby Publisher (for related information, see <u>Virtual IP Address Considerations</u>.



It is good practice that when you configure a Standby Publisher and deploy a virtual IP address, the Standby Publisher should be paired with the active Publisher in the VIP group.

- Ensure that the cluster nodes are being monitored.
 Determine if a Publisher node is no longer reachable or not providing service (for example, by SNMP host checking).
- Set up the network access devices (NADs) to point to a primary node, backup node, and a tertiary node.
 Doing so provides for continuity of the RADIUS authentication and accounting traffic until the Standby Publisher transitions to the active state.

Virtual IP Address Considerations

Using a virtual IP address allows for the deployment of a highly available pair of servers. This reduces the amount of down-time in the event of a server failure. If one of the servers in a high-availability pair fails, the other server can take over the virtual IP address and continue providing service to clients. This is particularly useful if the network access server (NAS) devices are processing basic RADIUS authentications to a CPPM node.

The Standby Publisher node cannot take over immediately as the failure may be transient and the minimum time for a Standby Publisher to become active is about eight minutes. This duration is due to five attempts (one per minute) to connect to the active Publisher's database, then about four minutes for the node to promote itself to an active state.

Thus, there will always be a delay before the virtual IP address on the transitioning active Publisher the NAS clients are communicating with is back in service and able to process RADIUS authentication requests.

During this eight-minute window, requests from subscribers to write to the Publisher's database will fail as there will be no Publisher available that can write to the database.

Functions Lost When the Publisher Is Down

When the active Publisher goes out of service, the following W-ClearPass Policy Manager functions are temporarily lost:

- AirGroup and MACTrac enrollment
- Certificate creation and revocation
- Certificate revocation list updates
- W-ClearPass Exchange outbound enforcement
- General W-ClearPass Policy Manager and W-ClearPass Guest configuration changes
- W-ClearPass Guest account creation
- Mobile device management endpoint polling and ingestion
- Onboarding functionality

Adding a Subscriber Node to the Publisher

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- Using the WebUI to Add a Subscriber Node
- Using the CLI to Create a Subscriber Node

Introduction

In the Policy Manager cluster environment, the Publisher node acts as the cluster master. A Policy Manager cluster can contain only one Publisher node. Administration, configuration, and database write operations can occur only on the Publisher node.

The Policy Manager hardware or virtual appliance defaults to a Publisher node unless it is made a Subscriber node. You can demote the Publisher to Subscriber status.



When the current node is a Subscriber, the **Make Subscriber** link isn't displayed.

Using the WebUI to Add a Subscriber Node

To add a Subscriber node to a Publisher node via the WebUI:

- 1. Log onto the W-ClearPass node that you want to make a Subscriber.
- Navigate to Administration > Server Manager > Server Configuration. The Server Configuration page opens.



Administration » Server Manager » Server Configuration								
Server Configuration				❷ s * C ☆ M * V * C & M * C	et Date & Time hange Cluster P lanage Policy Ma etEvents Target lear Machine Au lake Subscriber pload Nessus Pl luster-Wide Para	assword anager Zo ts thenticati ugins ameters	ones on Cache	
Publisher Server: VM-103 [10	Publisher Server: VM-103 [10.17.6.103]							
# Server Name 🛦	Management Port	Data Port	Zone	Profile	Cluster Sync	Last Sy	nc Time	
1. VM-103	10.17.6.103	-	default	Enabled	Enabled	-		
Showing 1-1 of 1			Collect Logs	Backup Restor	e Cleanup S	hutdown	Reboot	

3. Click Make Subscriber.

The Add Subscriber Node dialog opens.



Add Subscriber Node	8
Publisher IP	10.10.5.5
Publisher Password	•••••
Restore the loc Do not back up WARNING :	cal log database after this operation p the existing databases before this operation
 Configuration changes cluster sync as part of All application licenses contact support to ac 	s will be blocked on the publisher during initial of this operation. s on this server will be removed. Please dd and activate these licenses.
	Save Cancel

4. Specify the **Add Subscriber Node** parameters as described in <u>Table 26</u>.

Table 26: Configuring Add Subscriber Node Parameters

Parameter	Action/Description
Publisher IP	1. Enter the Publisher node's IP address.
Publisher Password	2. Enter the appadmin (CLI) password.
Restore the local log database after this operation	3. To restore the log database following the addition of a Subscriber node, select the check box.
Do not backup the existing databases before this operation	4. Select this check box only if you do not require a backup to the existing database.

- 5. Be sure to note the warnings on this dialog and respond as needed.
- 6. When finished, click **Save**.

You will see the message: *Adding node as subscriber to <IP_address>'s cluster*. When the process completes, the following messages are displayed:

Figure 128 Completing Subscriber Setup

Add Subscriber Node	8
Make subscriber complete. Re-login after sometime	
INFO - Restore started for AppPlatform databases INFO - Restore complete for AppPlatform databases INFO - Restore started for PolicyManager databases INFO - Compressed database size for tipsLogDb: 1.21 MB INFO - Database size after restore for tipsLogDb: 17 MB INFO - Restore complete for PolicyManager databases INFO - Subscriber replication and node setup complete INFO - Notify publisher that adding subscriber is complete INFO - Subscriber added successfully	•
INFO - Restarting Policy Manager admin server Make subscriber complete. Re-login after sometime	-
Clos	se

7. To complete the Subscriber setup, log back into the new Subscriber node.

When you log into the Publisher node or the Subscriber node, the Policy Manager Dashboard presents the updated cluster status:

Figure 129	Cluster Status: Subscriber Node Added
------------	---------------------------------------

ClearPass Policy Manager					<u>Help</u> <u>Logout</u> (Super Administrator)
<<					default 💌
Clust	er Status				8
Statu	s Host Name	Zone	Server Role	Last Replication	Status
9	VM-103 (10.)	default	Publisher	-	ОК
9	VM-6104 (10.)	default	Subscriber	Jun 24, 2015 04:38:29 IST	ОК

You can also track this process in the Event Viewer following a successful Subscriber addition, as shown in Figure 130.

Figure 130	Tracking the Add Node Process in the Event Viewer
------------	---------------------------------------------------

System Event Details	8
Source	Cluster
Level	INFO
Category	AddNode
Action	Success
Timestamp	Aug 18, 2014 15:24:11 PDT
Description	Added subscriber node with management IP=10.2.102.183

Using the CLI to Create a Subscriber Node

You can make a node a Subscriber via the command line interface.

You can perform multiple cluster-related administrative functions from the CLI. The CLI provides additional functionality that cannot be accomplished from the user interface.

To use the CLI to make a node a Subscriber in the cluster:

- 1. Log in as the **appadmin** user to the W-ClearPass node using SSH client software (such as PuTTY).
- 2. Issue the following command:

cluster make-subscriber -I [publisher IP address]

Figure 131 Description of the cluster make-subscriber command



After you enter the IP address of the Publisher, you will see the following warning message:

Figure 132 Subscriber Warning Message



- 3. To confirm that you want to continue, enter **y**.
- 4. Enter the cluster (**appadmin**) password for the Publisher. The process to downgrade the node to a Subscriber begins.

Rejoining a Down Node to the Cluster

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- Removing a Subscriber Node from the Cluster
- Rejoining a Node Back Into the Cluster

Introduction

When a node loses communication with the cluster for a period greater than 24 hours, the publisher designates that node as *down*.

To rejoin this node to the cluster requires that you remove the node from the cluster and reset the configuration on the out-of-sync node.

Removing a Subscriber Node from the Cluster

To remove a subscriber node from the cluster:

- 1. From the publisher node, navigate to **Administration** > **Server Manager** > **Server Configuration**.
- 2. From the Server Configuration screen, select the subscriber you want to remove.

Figure 133 Selecting the Subscriber Node to Remove

Administration » Server Manager » Server Configuration Set Date & Time Server Configuration Change Cluster Password 📴 Manage Policy Manager Zones NetEvents Targets 🚏 Virtual IP Settings 🚏 Clear Machine Authentication Cache 📥 Upload Nessus Plugins Cluster-Wide Parameters Publisher Server: p.india.avendasys.com [10.17.4.69] Management Port Last Sync Time Server Name 🛦 🛛 Data Port Zone Profile Cluster Sync 21. Sub1-V8-500.india.avendasys.com 10. default Enabled Disabled 22. Sub2-V8-500.india.avendasys.com 10. default Enabled Disabled

Collect Logs Backup Restore Cleanup Shutdown Reboot

3. Click Drop Subscriber.

Showing 21-22 of 22

You are prompted to confirm the drop action.

Figure 134 Confirming the Drop Subscriber Operation



To remove the selected subscriber node, click **Yes** (or press **Cancel** to cancel the operation).
 When you proceed, you are presented with a set of options to further refine the Drop Subscriber operation:

Drop Subscriber

Figure 135 Drop Subscriber Node Confirmation Options



You may optionally choose to enable the following Drop Subscriber Node options:

- Drop a node even if it's down.
- Do not reset the database on the dropped node.
- Do not back up the existing databases before this operation.
- 5. Click the check box for each confirmation option you wish to enable, then click **Yes**. The subscriber node is removed from the cluster.

Rejoining a Node Back Into the Cluster

You can rejoin a cluster node that is currently in the Disabled state back into to the cluster.

To rejoin a disabled node back into the cluster:

Navigate to the Administration > Server Manager > Server Configuration page.
 Figure 136 shows that one of the subscribers in the cluster is disabled.

Figure 136 Server Configuration Page Showing Disabled Cluster Node

Administ Serve	ration » Server Manager » S r Configuration	erver Configuration			Set Date & Time Change Cluster Pass Manage Policy Mana NetEvents Targets Virtual IP Settings Clear Machine Authe Cluster-Wide Param	sword ger Zones Intication Cache eters	
#	Server Name 🛦	Management Port	Data Port	Zone	Profile	Cluster Sync	Last Sync Time
1.	© vm-65	10.77.8	-	default	Enabled	Disabled	Jan 16, 2015 14:08:28 IST
2.	© vm-66		-	default	Enabled	Enabled	Jan 16, 2015 14:26:29 IST
3.	© vm-69		-	default	Enabled	Enabled	-
S	howing 1-3 of 3			Collect Logs Backup	Restore	Cleanup Shutdown	Reboot Drop Subscriber

2. Select the disabled subscriber node that you want to rejoin the cluster.

The **Server Configuration** > **System** dialog appears for the selected node. As shown in <u>Figure 137</u>, the dialog includes the **Join server back to cluster** option.

Figure 137 Join Server Back to Cluster Option Displayed

Administration » Server Manager » Server Configuration - vm-69								
Server Configuration - vm-	59 (10.) Set Time Zone Synchronize Cluster Password Promote To Publisher Join server back to cluster							
System Services Control Ser	rice Parameters System Monitoring Network FIPS							
Hostname:	vm-69							
FQDN:								
Policy Manager Zone:	default Manage Policy Manager Zones							
Enable Profile:	☑ Enable this server for endpoint classification							
Enable Performance Monitoring Display:	Enable this server for performance monitoring display							
Insight Setting:	Enable Insight							
Span Port:	None 💌							

3. Click Join server back to cluster.

A warning message appears, providing the option to promote the current node to publisher status:

Join server back to cluster	8
Join server 10. back to cluster?	
Promote to Publisher?	
WARNING : All data that is not synced from the failed publisher will b lost (like new guest accounts that does not exist in current running publisher).	e
Yes Cano	el:

Figure 138 Option to Promote Disabled Node to Publisher

To proceed (without promoting the disabled node to publisher status), click Yes.
 The progress of the rejoin operation is shown, displaying the log entries for each completed task.

Deploying W-ClearPass Insight in a Cluster

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- W-ClearPass Insight Placement Considerations
- When a W-ClearPass Insight-Enabled Node Is Down
- Enabling W-ClearPass Insight

Introduction

Multiple functions are dependent on W-ClearPass Insight for them to function, for example, MAC caching. W-ClearPass Insight must be enabled on at least one node within a cluster.



Enabling W-ClearPass Insight on at least two nodes in the cluster is recommended.

As you enable W-ClearPass Insight on additional nodes in the cluster, CPPM automatically adds these nodes to the W-ClearPass Insight database authentication source definition.

W-ClearPass Insight does not replicate data to any other nodes within the cluster—it is an entirely stand-alone database.

W-ClearPass Insight Placement Considerations

Having W-ClearPass Insight enabled on multiple nodes within the cluster provides for a level of resilience, however, you need to carefully consider where you enable W-ClearPass Insight. For every node where W-ClearPass Insight is enabled, all the other nodes within the cluster subscribe through *NetEvents* to send data to the W-ClearPass Insight database.

The amount of data sent to the W-ClearPass Insight database can be extremely high, and if you use Insight for processing authentication requests within your cluster, where you enable W-ClearPass Insight is an important design consideration:

- If you are running a large CPPM network in which the subscriber traffic is *not* consuming all the publisher's resources, enable W-ClearPass Insight on the dedicated publisher and the standby publisher.
- If you are running a very large CPPM network in which the subscriber traffic will consume the publisher's resources, you could enable W-ClearPass Insight on the dedicated publisher and the standby publisher, but only if both of these nodes are dedicated to cluster operations—the publisher and standby publisher should not be processing authentication requests.
- In a very large-scale deployment, W-ClearPass Insight should be placed on its own dedicated node. This
 removes a lot of processing and I/O from the publisher, allowing it to handle the maximum amount of
 worker traffic.
- W-ClearPass Insight data is valuable and could be used as part of policy evaluation. If this is the case, Dell recommends that you enable redundant W-ClearPass Insight nodes for fault tolerance.
- If the worker traffic sent from the subscriber nodes is expected to fully saturate the capacity of the publisher node, W-ClearPass Insight should not be enabled on the publisher node. However, if the publisher node has spare capacity, it can be used to support the W-ClearPass Insight database. However, take care to carefully monitor the publisher node's capacity and performance.

When a W-ClearPass Insight-Enabled Node Is Down

When a W-ClearPass Insight-enabled node in a cluster is down or out-of-sync for more than 30 minutes, the W-ClearPass Insight node is moved to be the last W-ClearPass Insight node in the fall-back list. This allows for fail-though to other W-ClearPass Insight nodes.

When a W-ClearPass Insight-enabled node is dropped from the cluster, the corresponding node entry in the W-ClearPass Insight repository is removed.

Enabling W-ClearPass Insight

W-ClearPass Insight is not enabled by default, so you must manually enable it.

To enable W-ClearPass Insight:

- 1. Navigate to Administration > Server Manager > Server Configuration.
- 2. From the **Server Configuration** page, select the W-ClearPass node you want to configure. The **Server Configuration** dialog opens.

Administration » Server Manager » Server Server Configuration - NIG	Configuration - NIGHTLY-CPPM-31 HTLY-CPPM-31 (10)	
System Services Control Services	vice Parameters System Monitoring Network FIPS	
Hostname:	NIGHTLY-CPPM-31	
FQDN:		
Policy Manager Zone:	default	Manage Policy Manager Zones
Enable Profile:	Enable this server for endpoint classification	
Enable Performance Monitoring Display:	Enable this server for performance monitoring display	
Insight Setting:	☑ Enable Insight ☑ Enable as Insight Master Current Master:-	
Enable Ingress Events Processing:	Enable Ingress Events processing on this server	
Span Port:	None 💌	

- 3. To enable the W-ClearPass Insight reporting tool on this node, select the **Enable Insight** check box.
 - When you enable this check box on a cluster node, the W-ClearPass Insight Repository configuration is automatically updated to point to the server's management IP address.
 - When you enable this check box for other servers in the cluster, those servers are added as backups for the same authentication source.
 - The order of the primary and backup servers in the W-ClearPass Insight Repository is the same order in which W-ClearPass Insight was enabled on those servers.
- To specify the current cluster node as an Insight Master, click the Enable as Insight Master check box. Enabling a cluster node as an Insight Master allows other nodes where Insight has been enabled to subscribe to this node's Insight Report configuration.

In the event that this node fails, the reports will still be produced because all the nodes in the cluster send a copy of their NetEvents data to all the nodes that have W-ClearPass Insight enabled.

5. When finished with enabling W-ClearPass Insight and configuring any other elements in the **Server Configuration** dialog, click **Save**.

Configuring Cluster File-Backup Servers

This section contains the following information:

- Adding Cluster File-Backup Servers
- Backing Up Configuration and Access Tracker Log Information

Adding Cluster File-Backup Servers

To add cluster file-backup servers:

W-ClearPass Policy Manager provides the ability to push scheduled data securely to an external server. You can push the data using the SFTP (SSH File Transfer Protocol) and SCP (Session Control Protocol) protocols.

To configure cluster file-backup servers:

- Navigate to the Administration > External Servers > File Backup Servers page. The File Backup Server page opens.
- 2. Click the **Add** link (at the top-right).

The Add File Backup Server page opens.

Figure 139 Add File Backup Servers Page

Add File Backup Ser	rver d	3
Host:		
Description:	.44	
Protocol:	● SFTP ◎ SCP	
Port:	22	
Username:		
Password:		
Verify Password:		
Timeout:	30	
Remote Directory:		
ClearPass Servers:	If specified, files will only be backed up from the selected ClearPass servers. Otherwise, it will be backed up from all ClearPass servers in the cluster.	
	Select to Add	
	Save Cancel	

Table describes the Add File Backup Server page parameters.

Table 27:	Add File	Backup	Page	Server	Page	Parameters
-----------	----------	--------	------	--------	------	------------

Parameter	Action/Description
Host	1. Enter the name or IP address of the host.
Description	2. Enter the description that provides additional information about the File Backup server.
Protocol	 3. Specify the protocol to be used to upload the generated reports to an external server. Select from the following protocols: SFTP (SSH File Transfer Protocol) SCP (Session Control Protocol)
Port	4. Specify the port number. The default port is 22 .
Username	5 Enter the user name and password of the host server, then verify the password
Password	

Parameter	Action/Description
Timeout	6. Specify the timeout value in seconds. The default value is 30 seconds.
Remote Directory	 Specify the location where the files are to be copied. A folder will be automatically created in the file path that you specify based on the selected W-ClearPass servers in the W-ClearPass Servers field.
ClearPass Servers	 From the Select to Add drop-down, select the cluster-file backup server(s) to be backed up. When you select specific W-ClearPass servers, files are backed up from the selected W-ClearPass servers only. Otherwise, the files from all the W-ClearPass servers in the cluster are backed up.

Figure 140 Specifying the File Backup Server

Add File Backup Sei	ver 🛛 😵
Host:	
Description:	
rin. Jul	<u>ک،</u>
Remote Directory:	
ClearPass Servers:	If specified, files will only be backed up from the selected ClearPass
	servers. Otherwise, it will be backed up from all ClearPass servers in
	the cluster.
	Remove
	•
	Select to Add
	Select to Add
	10.162.114.23 ave Cancel

9. When finished, click **Save**.

Backing Up Configuration and Access Tracker Log Information

By default, only cluster configuration information is sent for backup. However, if you need cluster log information to be backed up as well, enter the following change.

To back up both configuration and Access Tracker log information:

1. On the publisher node, navigate to **Administration** > **Server Manager** > **Server Configuration**.

Figure 141 Server Configuration Menu



2. From the Server Configuration page, choose Cluster-Wide Parameters.

Figure 142 Auto Backup Configuration Options

Cluster-Wide Parameters							8
General Cleanup Intervals	Notifications	Stand	by Publishe	r	Virtual IP Configurat	ion Mode	
Parameter Name			Parameter	[.] Valu	e	Default Value	
Policy result cache timeout			5		minutes	5	
Auto backup configuration options			Config	•		Config	
Free disk space threshold value			Off			30	
Free memory threshold value			Config Sess	sionInfo	b	30	
Profile subnet scan interval			24		hours	24	
Database user "appexternal" passw	ord		•••••	••••			Ξ
Endpoint Context Servers polling in	terval		60		minutes	60	
Automatically check for available S	oftware Updates		TRUE	•		TRUE	
Login Banner Text					4 4 4 4		
Replication Batch Interval			5		seconds	5	
Admin Session Idle Timeout			30		minutes	30	
Store Password Hash for MSCHAP a	authentication		TRUE	•		TRUE	
Denfermen en Marriter Den denine Den	L		00		1	00	
					Restore Defaults	Save Canc	el

- 3. From the Auto backup configuration options drop-down, choose Config|SessionInfo.
- 4. When finished with changes to the cluster-wide parameters, click **Save**.

Using High Capacity Guest Mode

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- Licensing Considerations
- EAP-PSK Protocol
- Enabling High Capacity Guest Mode
- Cleanup Intervals Settings for High Capacity Guest Mode
- Service Templates Supported
- Service Types Supported
- Authentication Methods Supported

Introduction

High Capacity Guest mode supports the high-volume licensing requirements in the public-facing enterprise environment, where a large volume of unique endpoints require wireless access and the number of endpoints changes every day, such as airports, hotels, hospitals, and shopping malls (for related information, see <u>Licensing Considerations</u>).

When High Capacity Guest mode is enabled on a cluster, the count of unique endpoints is reset every day, providing the ability for a node to support double the number of guest accounts, regardless of whether it's a hardware or virtual appliance.

ClearPass Insight

High Capacity Guest mode requires that the W-ClearPass Insight reporting tool must be enabled on at least one node in the cluster. For instructions on enabling Insight, as well as guidance as to where Insight should be enabled in the cluster, see Deploying W-ClearPass Insight in a Cluster on page 152.

Restrictions

When High Capacity Guest mode is enabled in a cluster, the following restrictions apply:

- Configuration settings cannot be moved from one cluster to another cluster that operates in High Capacity Guest mode.
- Restoring configuration data is allowed only with the backup files from W-ClearPass servers that have High Capacity Guest mode enabled.
- Use case-related settings other than High Capacity Guest mode settings are restricted.
- Access to OnGuard and OnBoard is restricted.
- Default cleanup interval values are reset (see <u>Cleanup Intervals Settings for High Capacity Guest Mode</u> for details).
- Only Guest application licenses are allowed.

Features Disabled Under High Guest Mode

In allowing double the number of licensed guest users, the following W-ClearPass features are disabled:

- W-ClearPass Onboard
- W-ClearPass OnGuard
- Performing posture checks on endpoints
- Performing audit checks on endpoints
- Service templates to configure 802.1X for both wired and wireless LANs
- The following EAP methods are disabled: FAST, GTC, MSCHAPv2, PEAP, TLS, TTLS

Licensing Considerations

You can add only guest licenses to High Capacity Guest mode. After enabling High Capacity Guest mode, you cannot add enterprise licenses.

If the number of licenses used exceeds the number of licenses purchased, a warning message appears four months after the number is exceeded.

The number of licenses used is based on the daily moving average.

In High Capacity Guest mode, a maximum of 2x guest licenses are allowed. For example, if you use the W-ClearPass 25K hardware appliance (CP-HW-25K) that supports 25,000 licenses, a maximum of 50,000 licenses would be allowed in High Capacity Guest mode.



An additional consideration to keep in mind is that the W-ClearPass Policy AAA licensing is reset on a daily basis. For example, if you purchase 8,000 Guest licenses for a W-ClearPass 5K hardware appliance (CP-HW-5K), you would be entitled to process 8,000 unique endpoints/guests per day.

EAP-PSK Protocol

When High Capacity Guest mode is enabled, EAP-PSK, a preshared key extensible authentication protocol is available. EAP-PSK is a method for mutual authentication and session key derivation using a preshared key (PSK). EAP-PSK provides a protected communication channel for both parties to communicate over when mutual authentication is successful.

EAP-PSK is well suited to a CPPM node running in High Capacity Guest mode. It simplifies the deployment of a guest network that is "open" in that the user ID and password are the same for each user, but secure as each guest/endpoint uses a unique per-endpoint Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) preshared key. The client doesn't need to support anything more than WPA-PSK.

Enabling High Capacity Guest Mode

When nodes are enabled for this mode, they can only be clustered with nodes that are also in High Capacity Guest mode. Adding a High Capacity Guest mode-enabled node to a cluster in which High Capacity Guest mode is not enabled on all the other nodes is not supported.

To enable High Capacity Guest mode:

- 1. Enable W-ClearPass Insight on at least one node in the cluster.
- 2. Navigate to Administration > Server Manager > Server Configuration > Cluster-Wide Parameters.
- 3. Select the **Mode** tab.

The screen shown in Figure 143 appears.

Figure 143 Enabling High Capacity Guest Mode

Cluster-Wide Parameters		٥
General Cleanup Intervals Notifications	Standby Publisher Virtual II	P Configuration Mode
Parameter Name	Parameter Value	Default Value
High Capacity Guest Mode	TRUE	FALSE
The High Capacity Guest (HCG) Mode is intend access. Enabling HCG Mode will restrict the following a • ClearPass Onboard and OnGuard applica • Only Guest application licenses can be a • Posture checks and Host Audit checks an • RADIUS-based authentication methods t	led for de FALSE h high y - tions will be disabled dded re not allowed hat are disabled - EAP-FAST, E	volumes of guest AP-GTC,
 Service Templates to configure 802.1X f allowed 	or wired / wireless or perform	Posture checks are not
HCG Mode requires ClearPass Insight to be er	abled on at least one node in t	he cluster
	Restore D	efaults Save Cancel

4. To enable High Capacity Guest mode, select **TRUE** from the drop-down, then click **Save**.

You receive the message:

<n> parameters updated successfully...Please refresh to continue.

5. Refresh the page.

Cleanup Intervals Settings for High Capacity Guest Mode

When you enable High Capacity Guest mode, the values for the **Cleanup Intervals** parameters are set automatically to ensure that W-ClearPass can support the significantly higher numbers of guests by making sure the amount of data stored in W-ClearPass is kept to a minimum (as shown in Figure 144).

To see the Cleanup Interval settings for High Capacity Guest mode:

1. Navigate to the **Cluster-Wide Parameters** > **Cleanup Intervals** tab.

The Cleanup Intervals dialog opens.

Figure 144 High Capacity Guest Mode Values for the Cleanup Intervals Parameters

Cluster-Wide	Parameters					
General	Cleanup Intervals	Notifications	Standby	/ Publisher	Virtual IP Configu	ration Mode
Parameter	Name			Parameter	r Value	Default Value
Maximum in	active time for an endp	oint		0	days	0
Cleanup int	erval for Session log de	tails in the datab	ase	3	days	7
Cleanup int	erval for information st	ored on the disk		7	days	7
Known end	points cleanup interval			3	days	0
Unknown er	ndpoints cleanup interv	al		3	days	0
Expired gue	est accounts cleanup in	terval		10	days	365
Profiled Unk	known endpoints cleanu	ıp interval		3	days	0
Static IP er	ndpoints cleanup optior	I		FALSE		FALSE
Old Audit R	ecords cleanup interval			10	days	7
Profiled Kno	own endpoints cleanup	option		TRUE		FALSE
					Restore Defaults	Save Cancel

Table 28 shows the value for each Cleanup Intervals parameter while in High Capacity Guest mode.

Table 28: Cleanup Interval Parameter Values in High Capacity Guest Mode

Cleanup Intervals Parameters	Values for HCG Mode
Maximum inactive time for an endpoint	HGC mode value: 0 days
Cleanup interval for Session log details in the database	HGC mode value: 3 days
Cleanup interval for information stored on the disk.	HGC mode value: 7 days
Known endpoints cleanup interval	HGC mode value: 3 days

Cleanup Intervals Parameters	Values for HCG Mode
Unknown endpoints cleanup interval	HGC mode value: 3 days
Expired guest accounts cleanup interval	HGC mode value: 10 days
Profiled endpoints cleanup interval	HGC mode value: 3 days
Static IP endpoints cleanup option	HGC mode value: FALSE
Old Audit Records cleanup interval	HGC mode value: 10 days
Profiled Known endpoints cleanup option	HGC mode value: TRUE

2. Click Cancel to exit.

Service Templates Supported

The following service templates are supported when High Capacity Guest mode is enabled:

- W-ClearPass Admin Access (Active Directory)
- W-ClearPass Admin SSO Login (SAML SP Service)
- W-ClearPass Identity Provider (SAML IdP Service)
- Encrypted Wireless Access via 802.1X Public PEAP method
- Guest Access
- Guest Access—Web Login
- Guest MAC Authentication
- OAuth2 API User Access

Service Types Supported

The following service types are supported when High Capacity Guest mode is enabled:

- MAC Authentication
- RADIUS Authorization
- 1RADIUS Enforcement
- RADIUS Proxy
- Dell W-Series Application Authentication
- Dell W-SeriesApplication Authorization
- TACACS+ Enforcement
- Web-based Authentication
- Web-based Open Network Access

Authentication Methods Supported

The following authentication methods are used in service templates in High Capacity Guest mode:

- PAP
- CHAP

- MSCHAP
- EAP_MD5
- MAC_AUTH
- AUTHORIZE
- EAP_PEAP_PUBLIC

Cluster CLI Commands

The Policy Manager command line interface includes the following cluster commands:

- <u>cluster drop-subscriber</u>
- <u>cluster list</u>
- cluster make-publisher
- <u>cluster make-subscriber</u>
- <u>cluster reset-database</u>
- cluster set-cluster-passwd
- cluster sync-cluster-passwd

cluster drop-subscriber

Use the **cluster drop-subscriber** command to remove a specific subscriber node from the cluster.

Syntax

```
cluster drop-subscriber [-f] [-i <IP address>] -s
```

Table 29 describes the required and optional parameters for the **drop-subscriber** command:

Tuble 29. Cluster Drop Subscriber communar arameters

Parameter/Flag	Description
-f	Forces even the nodes that are down to be dropped.
-i <ip address=""></ip>	Specifies the Management IP address of the node. If this IP address is not specified and the current node is a subscriber, then Policy Manager drops the current node.
-S	Restricts resetting the database on the dropped node. By default, Policy Manager drops the current node—if it's a subscriber node—from the cluster.

Example

The following example removes the subscriber node with IP address 192.xxx.1.1 from the cluster:

[appadmin]# cluster drop-subscriber -f -i 192.xxx.1.1 -s

cluster list

Use the **cluster list** command to list all the nodes in the cluster.

Syntax

cluster list

Example

The following example lists all the nodes in the cluster:

[appadmin]# cluster list

cluster make-publisher

Use the **cluster make-publisher** command to promote a specific subscriber node to be the publisher node in the same cluster.



When running this command, do not close the shell or interrupt the command execution.

Example

The following example promotes a subscriber node to publisher node status:

[appadmin] # cluster make-publisher

To continue the **make-publisher** operation, enter **y**.

cluster make-subscriber

Run the **cluster make-subscriber** command on a standalone publisher to make the standalone node a subscriber and add it to the cluster.

Syntax

cluster make-subscriber -b -i <IP address> [-1]

Table 30 describes the parameters for the cluster make-subscriber command.

Parameter/Flag	Description
-b	Generates a backup of the publisher before you make it a subscriber in the event the make-subscriber process fails and you need to restore the publisher.
-i <ip address=""></ip>	Specifies the publisher IP address. This field is mandatory.
-1	Restores the local log database after this operation. This field is optional.

 Table 30: Cluster Make-Subscriber Command Parameters

Example

The following example converts the node with IP address 192.xxx.1.1 to a subscriber node:

[appadmin]# cluster make-subscriber -i 192.xxx.1.1 -l

cluster reset-database





Running this command erases the Policy Manager configuration and resets the database to its default configuration—all the configured data will be lost.

When running this command, do not close the shell or interrupt the command execution.

Syntax and Example

cluster reset-database

cluster set-cluster-passwd

Use the **cluster set-cluster-passwd** command to change the cluster password on all nodes in the cluster. Issue this command from the publisher node.

Syntax

```
cluster set-cluster-passwd
```

Example

The following example changes the cluster password on all the nodes in the cluster:

```
[appadmin]# cluster set-cluster-passwd
cluster set-cluster-passwd
Enter Cluster Passwd: college.162
Re-enter Cluster Passwd: college.162
INFO - Password changed on local (publisher) node
```

Cluster password changed

cluster sync-cluster-passwd

Use the **cluster sync-cluster-passwd** command to synchronize the cluster (**appadmin**) password currently set on the publisher with all the subscriber nodes in the cluster.



Synchronizing the cluster password changes the appadmin password for all the nodes in the cluster

Syntax and Example

[appadmin]# cluster sync-cluster-passwd

Example

The following example changes the local password:

[appadmin] # cluster set-local-password

cluster sync-local-passwd Enter Password: college.205

```
Re-enter Password: college.205
```

This chapter describes how to configure an Mobility Access Switch for 802.1X authentication.

This chapter includes the following information:

- Mobility Access Switch Configuration for 802.1X Wired Authentication
- Configuring 802.1X Authentication with Machine Authentication
- CLI-Based Configuration for Mobility Access Switch 802.1X Authentication

Mobility Access Switch Configuration for 802.1X Wired Authentication

This section describes how to configure the Mobility Access Switch (MAS) for 802.1X wired authentication. This section contains the following information:

- About Defining Wired 802.1X Authentication
- <u>Configuring Authentication with a RADIUS Server</u>
- Authentication Terminated on the Mobility Access Switch
- <u>Configuring Access Control Lists</u>

About Defining Wired 802.1X Authentication

Port-based 802.1X authentication on the Mobility Access Switch is configured similarly to how it's done on the mobility controller, the main difference being the AAA profile is applied on a wired interface or interface-group, as opposed to a Virtual Access Point (VAP) on the mobility controller.

<u>Figure 145</u> shows the network traffic flow for wired clients that connect to an Dell Mobility Access Switch or a third-party switch and perform 802.1X authentication to the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server.



Figure 145 Traffic flow for 802.1X Wired Authentication with Active Directory

The configuration process is as follows:

- 1. Define an external RADIUS server or create an internal database.
- 2. Define a server group and apply one of the servers above to this server group.
- 3. Create 802.1X authentication profiles.
- 4. Apply the server group to each of the 802.1X authentication profiles.
- 5. Apply the 802.1X authentication profiles to an AAA profile.

6. Apply the AAA profile to the physical interface or interface group. You can now configure an interface for 802.1X authentication.

Configuring Authentication with a RADIUS Server

In order to authenticate to the network, the client communicates with the Mobility Access Switch through an EAP tunnel (see Figure 146). Therefore, the network authentication and encryption configured must be the same on both the client and the Mobility Access Switch.





To configure 802.1X authentication with a RADIUS server:

1. For the Mobility Access Switch to communicate with the authentication server, you must configure the following paramters on the Mobility Access Switch:

Parameter	Action/Description
IP address	1. Enter the IP address of the authentication server.
Authentication port	2. Enter the Authentication port number on the authentication server. Default: 1812 .
Accounting port	3. Enter the Accounting port number on the authentication server. Default: 1813 .

4. You must configure the supplicant (the client device) and authentication server (the Mobility Access Switch) to use the same EAP type.

The Mobility Access Switch doesn't need to know the EAP type used between the supplicant and authentication server.

- 5. You must configure the authentication server with the IP address of the RADIUS client, which in this case is the Mobility Access Switch.
- 6. Be sure to configure both the Mobility Access Switch and the authentication server to use the same shared secret.



Additional information on EAP types supported in a Windows environment for Microsoft supplicants and the authentication server is available at http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc782851(WS.10).aspx.

Authentication Terminated on the Mobility Access Switch

User authentication is performed either via the Mobility Access Switch's internal database or a non-802.1x server.





In this scenario, the supplicant is configured for EAP-Protected EAP (PEAP) or EAP-Transport Layer Security (TLS).

EAP-PEAP

EAP-PEAP uses TLS to create an encrypted tunnel. Within the tunnel, one of the following "inner EAP" methods is used:

• EAP-Generic Token Card (GTC)

Described in RFC 2284, this EAP method permits the transfer of unencrypted usernames and passwords from client to server. The main uses for EAP-GTC are one-time token cards such as SecureID and the use of an LDAP or RADIUS server as the user authentication server.

You can also enable caching of user credentials on the Mobility Access Switch as a backup to an external authentication server.

EAP-Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol version 2 (MS-CHAPv2)
 Described in RFC 2759, this EAP method is widely supported by Microsoft clients. A RADIUS server must be used as the backend authentication server.

EAP-TLS

EAP-TLS is used with smart-card user authentication. A smart card holds a digital certificate which, with the user-entered personal identification number (PIN), allows the user to be authenticated on the network. EAP-TLS relies on digital certificates to verify the identities of both the client and server.

EAP-TLS requires that you import server and certification authority (CA) certificates onto the Mobility Access Switch. The client certificate is verified on the Mobility Access Switch (the client certificate must be signed by a known CA) before the user name is checked on the authentication server.

Internal Database Configuration Task

If you are using the Mobility Access Switch's internal database for user authentication, you need to add the names and passwords of the users to be authenticated.

LDAP Server Configuration Task

If you are using an LDAP server for user authentication, you need to configure the LDAP server on the Mobility Access Switch, and configure user IDs and passwords.

RADIUS Server Configuration Task

If you are using a RADIUS server for user authentication, you need to configure the RADIUS server on the Mobility Access Switch:

- For details, see Configuring Authentication with a RADIUS Server on page 166.
- For the CLI example, see Examples of Common 802.1X Configuration Tasks Via the CLI on page 176).

Configuring Access Control Lists

To provide flexibility for controlling traffic, ArubaOS in Mobility Access Switches supports multiple types of Access Control Lists (ACLs).

Ethertype ACL

Ethertype ACLs filter based on the *Ethertype* field in the frame header. Ethertype ACLs can be either named or numbered, with valid numbers in the range from 200 to 299. These ACLs can be used to permit IP, while blocking other non-IP protocols, such as IPX or AppleTalk.

MAC ACL

MAC ACLs filter traffic on a specific source MAC address or range of MAC addresses. MAC ACLs can be either named or numbered, with valid numbers in the range from 700 to 799 and 1200 to 1299.

Standard IP ACL

Standard ACLs permit or deny traffic based on the source IP address of the packet. Standard ACLS can be either named or numbered, with valid numbers in the range from 1 to 99 and 1300 to 1399. Standard ACLs use a bit-wise mask to specify the portion of the source IP address to be matched.

Extended IP ACL

Extended ACLs permit or deny traffic based on the source or destination IP address, or the IP protocol. Extended ACLs can be named or numbered, with valid numbers in the range from 100 to 199 and 2000 to 2699.

Stateless ACL

Stateless ACLs define stateless packet filtering and quality of service (QoS). A stateless ACL statically evaluates packet contents. The traffic in the reverse direction is allowed unconditionally.

Note that you can use names only when configuring stateless ACLs.

Configuring a Stateless ACL

To configure a stateless ACL:

(DellSwitch)(config) #'''ip access-list stateless STATELESS'''

(DellSwitch) (config-stateless-STATELESS) #'''any host 192.16.0.100 tcp 0 65535 permit'''

Applying a Stateless ACL on a Physical Interface

To apply a stateless ACL on a physical interface:

(DellSwitch) (config) #'''interface gigabitethernet 0/0/8'''

(DellSwitch) (gigabitethernet "0/0/8") #'''ip access-group in STATELESS'''

Applying a Stateless ACL to a User Role

To apply a stateless ACL to a user role:

```
(DellSwitch) (config) #'''user-role EMPLOYEE 1'''
```

(DellSwitch) (config-role) #'''access-list stateless STATELESS'''



You can also apply MAC and Ethertype ACLs to a user role. However, these ACLs apply only to a user's non-IP traffic.

Verifiying Stateless ACL Configuration

To verify a stateless ACL configuration:

(DellSwitch) #'''show ip access-list STATELESS'''

Verifying Stateless ACL Traffic Hits

To verify stateless traffic hits:

(DellSwitch) #'''show acl hits'''

Verifying Stateless ACL Operation

To verify stateless ACL operation:

(DellSwitch) # '''show acl acl-table'''

CLI-Based Configuration for Mobility Access Switch 802.1X Authentication

This section contains the following information:

- <u>Termination Options</u>
- Configuring a Server Rule Using the CLI
- Setting Variables for LDAP Servers
- Configuring Certificates with Authentication Termination

Termination Options

The Mobility Access Switch supports 802.1x authentication, including *termination*. For example, the list of termination options for the profile name *FacultyAuth* is shown below.

(host) (802.1X Authentic	cation Profile "FacultyAuth")
eap-type	Configure the EAP method.Default method is EAP-PEAP
enable	Enable Dot1x Termination.Default is disabled
enable-token-caching	Enable Token Caching.Default is disabled
inner-eap-type	Configure the inner EAP method.Default method is
	EAP-MSCHAPV2
token-caching-period	Configure the Token Caching Period

802.1x Authentication Profile Configuration Examples

The following example configures various options for the 802.1x Authentication profile FacultyAuth.

```
(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") #termination enable
(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") #termination eap-type eap-peap
(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") #max-authentication-failures 2
(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") #timer reauth-period 3600
(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") #framed-mtu 1500
```

(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") #reauth-max 2
(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") #reauthentication

Verifying Configurations

To verify the above configurations, execute the following **show** command:

(host) (config) #show aaa authentication dot1x FacultyAuth

802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth"

Parameter	Value	
Max authentication failures	2	<
Enforce Machine Authentication	Disabled	
Machine Authentication: Default Machine Role	guest	
Machine Authentication Cache Timeout	24 hr(s)	
Blacklist on Machine Authentication Failure	Disabled	
Machine Authentication: Default User Role	guest	
Interval between Identity Requests	30 sec	
Quiet Period after Failed Authentication	30 sec	
Reauthentication Interval	3600 sec	<
Use Server provided Reauthentication Interval	Disabled	
Authentication Server Retry Interval	30 sec	
Authentication Server Retry Count	2	
Framed MTU	1500 bytes	<
Number of times ID-Requests are retried	3	
Maximum Number of Reauthentication Attempts	2	<
Maximum number of times Held State can be bypassed	0	
Reauthentication	Enabled	<
Termination	Enabled	<
Termination EAP-Type	eap-peap	<
Termination Inner EAP-Type	N/A	
Enforce Suite-B 128 bit or more security level Authentication	Disabled	
Enforce Suite-B 192 bit security level Authentication	Disabled	
Token Caching	Disabled	
Token Caching Period	24 hr(s)	
CA-Certificate	N/A	
Server-Certificate	N/A	
TLS Guest Access	Disabled	
TLS Guest Role	guest	
Ignore EAPOL-START after authentication	Disabled	
Handle EAPOL-Logoff	Disabled	
Ignore EAP ID during negotiation.	Disabled	
Check certificate common name against AAA server	Enabled	



Use the privileged mode in the CLI to configure users in the Mobility Access Switch's internal database.

Adding Users to the Local Database

To add users to the local database, use the following command:

local-userdb add username <user> password <password> role <user_role>

Configuring a Server Rule Using the CLI

To configure a server rule using the CLI:

```
aaa server-group dot1x_internal
set role condition Role value-of
```

Setting Variables for LDAP Servers

If you are using a LDAP server for authentication, the following variables should be set:

- Termination enabled
- EAP type of PEAP (with inner-EAP-type set to GTC) or TLS

LDAP Server Example Configuration

Below is an example configuration for the profile FacultyAuth for an LDAP server:

```
(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") #termination enable
(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") #termination eap-type eap-peap
(host) (802.1X Authentication Profile "FacultyAuth") # termination inner-eap-type eap-gtc
```

Verifying the Configuration

To verify the configuration, execute the **show aaa authentication dot1x** < *profile_name* > command.

Configuring Certificates with Authentication Termination

The Mobility Access Switch supports 802.1x authentication using digital certificates for authentication termination.

Server Certificate

A server certificate installed in the Mobility Access Switch verifies the authenticity of the Mobility Access Switch for 802.1x authentication. Mobility Access Switches ship with a demonstration digital certificate.

Until you install a customer-specific server certificate in the Mobility Access Switch, this demonstration certificate is used by default for all secure HTTP connections and auth termination. This certificate is included primarily for feature demonstration and convenience and is not intended for long-term use in production networks.

Users in a production environment are urged to obtain and install a certificate issued for their site or domain by a well-known certificate authority (CA). You can generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) on the Mobility Access Switch to submit to a CA.

Client Certificates

Client certificates are verified on the Mobility Access Switch (the client certificate must be signed by a known CA) before the user name is checked on the authentication server. To use client certificate authentication for auth termination you need to import the following certificates into the Mobility Access Switch:

- Mobility Access Switch's server certificate
- CA certificate for the CA that signed the client certificates

Using the CLI

To use the CLI to configure certificates with authentication termination:

```
aaa authentication dot1x <profile>
  termination enable
  server-cert <certificate>
  ca-cert <certificate>
```

Configuring 802.1X Authentication with Machine Authentication

This section contains the following information:

- About Machine Authentication
- Enabling the Enforce Machine Authentication Option
- Role Assignment with Machine Authentication Enabled
- VLAN Assignments
- Authentication with an 802.1x RADIUS Server
- Examples of Common 802.1X Configuration Tasks Via the CLI

About Machine Authentication

When a Windows device boots, it logs onto the network domain using a machine account. Within the domain, the device is authenticated before computer group policies and software settings can be executed; this process is known as *machine authentication*. Machine authentication ensures that only authorized devices are allowed on the network.

Enabling the Enforce Machine Authentication Option

You can configure 802.1X authentication for both user and machine authentication (for Windows environments only). This strengthens the authentication process further since both the device and user need to be authenticated.

Select the **Enforce Machine Authentication** option to enforce machine authentication before user authentication.

When selected, either **the Machine Authentication Default Role** or the **User Authentication Default Role** is assigned to the user, depending on which authentication is successful. This option is disabled by default.



This option may require a Policy Enforcement Firewall Next Generation (PEFNG) or Policy Enforcement Firewall Module (PEFV) license.

To enable Enforce Machine Authentication:

- 1. On the mobility controller, navigate to the **Configuration** > **SECURITY** > **Authentication** > **L2 Authentication** page.
- 2. In the Profiles list, expand the **802.1x Authentication** list and select the 802.1X Authentication profile of interest.

The selected 802.1X Authentication Profile is displayed.



802.1X Authentication Profile > dot1x_prof-sxy02	Show Reference Save As Reset		
Basic Advanced			
Max authentication failures	0		
Enforce Machine Authentication			
Machine Authentication: Default Machine Role	guest 🔻		
Machine Authentication: Default User Role guest 🔻			
Reauthentication			
Termination			
Termination EAP-Type	eap-tls eap-peap		
Termination Inner EAP-Type	eap-mschapv2 eap-gtc		
Enforce Suite-B 128 bit or more security level Authentication			
Enforce Suite-B 192 bit security level Authentication			

3. To enable the option, select the **Enforce Machine Authentication** check box.

Role Assignment with Machine Authentication Enabled

When you enable machine authentication, there are two additional roles you can define in the 802.1x authentication profile:

- Machine authentication: default machine role
- Machine authentication: default user role

While you can select the same role for both options, you should define the roles according to the policies that need to be enforced. Also, these machine authentication roles can be different from the 802.1x authentication default role configured in the AAA profile.

With machine authentication enabled, the assigned role depends upon the success or failure of the machine and user authentications. In certain cases, the role that is ultimately assigned to a client can also depend upon attributes returned by the authentication server or server derivation rules configured on the Mobility Access Switch.

Table 31 describes role assignment based on the results of the machine and user authentications.

Table 31: Role Assignments for User and Machine Authentication

Machine Auth Status	User Auth Status	Description	Role Assignment
Failed	Failed	Both machine authentication and user authentication failed. Layer 2 authentication failed.	Initial role defined in the AAA profile will be assigned. If no initial role is explicitly defined, the default initial role (logon role) is assigned.
Failed	Passed	Machine authentication fails (for example, the machine information is not present on the server) and user authentication succeeds. Server-derived roles do not apply.	Machine authentication default user role configured in the 802.1x authentication profile.
Passed	Failed	Machine authentication succeeds and user authentication has not been initiated. Server-derived roles do not apply.	Machine authentication default machine role configured in the 802.1x authentication profile.
Passed	Passed	Both machine and user are successfully authenticated. If there are server-derived roles, the role assigned via the derivation take precedence. This is the <i>only</i> case where server-derived roles are applied.	A role derived from the authentication server takes precedence. Otherwise, the 802.1x authentication default role configured in the AAA profile is assigned.

Role Assignments Example

For example, if the following roles are configured:

- 802.1x authentication default role (in AAA profile): dot1x_user
- Machine authentication default machine role (in 802.1x authentication profile): dot1x_mc
- Machine authentication default user role (in 802.1x authentication profile): guest

The Role assignments would be as follows:

- If both machine and user authentication succeed, the role is **dot1x_user**.
 - If there is a server-derived role, the server-derived role takes precedence.
- If only machine authentication succeeds, the role is **dot1x_mc**.
- If only user authentication succeeds, the role is **guest**.
- On failure of both machine and user authentication, the initial role defined in the AAA profile is assigned.

VLAN Assignments

With machine authentication enabled, the VLAN to which a client is assigned (and from which the client obtains its IP address) depends upon the success or failure of the machine and user authentications.

The VLAN that is ultimately assigned to a client can also depend upon attributes returned by the authentication server or server derivation rules configured on the Mobility Access Switch.

If machine authentication is successful, the client is associated to the VLAN configured on the interface. However, the client can be assigned a derived VLAN upon successful user authentication.



You can optionally assign a VLAN as part of a user role configuration. It is recommended not to use VLAN derivation if user roles are configured with VLAN assignments.

Table 32 describes VLAN assignment based on the results of the machine and user authentications when VLAN derivation is used.

Machine Auth Status	User Auth Status	Description	VLAN Assignment
Failed	Failed	Both machine authentication and user authentication failed. Layer 2 authentication failed.	 VLAN configured on the interface. VLAN configured under initial role.
Failed	Passed	Machine authentication fails (for example, the machine information is not present on the server) and user authentication succeeds.	 VLAN configured on the interface. VLAN configured under machine authentication default user role.
Passed	Failed	Machine authentication succeeds and user authentication has not been initiated.	 VLAN configured on the interface. VLAN configured under machine authentication default user role.
Passed	Passed	Both machine and user are successfully authenticated.	Derived VLAN.VLAN configured on the interface.

Table 32: VLAN Assignments for User and Machine Authentication

Authentication with an 802.1x RADIUS Server

When authenticating with an 802.1X RADIUS server:

• An EAP-compliant RADIUS server provides the 802.1x authentication.

The RADIUS server administrator must configure the server to support this authentication. The administrator must also configure the server to handle all communications with the Mobility Access Switch.

802.1x authentication based on PEAP with MS-CHAPv2 provides both computer and user authentication.
 If a user attempts to log in without the computer being authenticated first, the user is placed into a limited guest user role.

Windows domain credentials are used for computer authentication, and the user's Windows login and password are used for user authentication. A single user sign-on facilitates both authentication to the network and access to the Windows server resources.

You can create the following policies and user roles for:

- Student
- Faculty

- Guest
- Sysadmin
- Computer

Examples of Common 802.1X Configuration Tasks Via the CLI

This section provides several examples of common configuration tasks via the command line interface (CLI):

- <u>Creating an Alias for the Internal Network</u>
- Creating the Student Role and Policy
- Creating the Faculty Role and Policy
- <u>Creating the Guest Role and Policy</u>
- Configuring the RADIUS Authentication Server
- Configuring 802.1x Authentication Profile
- Configuring the AAA Profile

Creating an Alias for the Internal Network

To create an alias for the internal network:

```
netdestination "Internal Network"
network 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0
network 172.16.0.0 255.255.0.0
```

Creating the Student Role and Policy

The *student* policy prevents students from using Telnet, POP3, FTP, SMTP, SNMP, or using SSH to access the wired portion of the network. The *student* policy is mapped to the *student* user role.

To create the Student role and policy:

```
ip access-list stateless student
any alias "Internal Network" svc-telnet deny
any alias "Internal Network" svc-pop3 deny
any alias "Internal Network" svc-ftp deny
any alias "Internal Network" svc-smtp deny
any alias "Internal Network" svc-snmp deny
any alias "Internal Network" svc-ssh deny
user-role student
access-list stateless student
access-list stateless allowall
```

Creating the Faculty Role and Policy

The *faculty* policy is similar to the student policy. However, the faculty members are allowed to use POP3 and SMTP. The *faculty* policy is mapped to the *faculty* user role.

To create the Faculty role and policy:

```
ip access-list stateless faculty
any alias "Internal Network" svc-telnet deny
any alias "Internal Network" svc-ftp deny
any alias "Internal Network" svc-snmp deny
any alias "Internal Network" svc-ssh deny
user-role faculty
```

```
access-list stateless faculty access-list stateless allowall
```

Creating the Guest Role and Policy

The *guest* policy permits only access to the Internet (via HTTP or HTTPS) and only during daytime working hours. The *guest* policy is mapped to the *guest* user role.

To create the guest role and policy:

```
time-range working-hours periodic
  weekday 07:30 to 17:00
ip access-list stateless guest
  any host 10.1.1.25 svc-dhcp permit time-range working-hours
  any host 10.1.1.25 svc-dns permit time-range working-hours
  any alias "Internal Network" any deny
  any any svc-http permit time-range working-hours
  any any svc-https permit time-range working-hours
  any any any deny
user-role guest
  access-list stateless guest
```

Configuring the RADIUS Authentication Server

You can set the role condition to identify the user's group. The Mobility Access Switch uses the literal value of this attribute to determine the role name.

The following example uses the RADIUS server name radiusFaculty to configure the RADIUS server.

To configure the RADIUS authentication server to identify the user's group:

```
(host) (config) #aaa authentication-server radius radiusTechPubs
(host) (RADIUS Server "radiusFaculty") #host 10.41.255.30
(host) (RADIUS Server "radiusFaculty") #key hometown
(host) (RADIUS Server "radiusFaculty") #exit
(host) (config) #aaa server-group radiusTechpubs
(host) (Server Group "radiusFaculty") #auth-server radiusTechpubs
```

(host) (Server Group "radiusFaculty") #set role condition Class Value-of

Configuring 802.1x Authentication Profile

In the 802.1x authentication profile, configure enforcement of machine authentication before user authentication (see Enabling the Enforce Machine Authentication Option).

If a user attempts to log in without machine authentication taking place first, the user is placed in the guest role.

To configure the 802.1X authentication profile:

```
aaa authentication dot1x dot1x
machine-authentication enable
machine-authentication machine-default-role student
machine-authentication user-default-role guest
```

Configuring the AAA Profile

An AAA profile specifies the 802.1x authentication profile and 802.1x server group to be used for authenticating clients. The AAA profile also specifies the default user roles for 802.1x authentication.

To configure the AAA profile:

aaa profile aaa_dot1x
dot1x-default-role guest
authentication-dot1x dot1x
dot1x-server-group radiusGuest

This chapter describes how to prepare W-ClearPass for LDAP and SQL authentication.

This chapter includes the following information:

- LDAP Authentication Source Configuration
- SQL Authentication Source Configuration

LDAP Authentication Source Configuration

Policy Manager can perform NTLM/MSCHAPv2, PAP/GTC, and certificate-based authentications against any LDAP-compliant directory (for example, Novell eDirectory, OpenLDAP, and Sun Directory Server).

LDAP and Active Directory-based server configurations are similar. You can retrieve role-mapping attributes by using filters.

Configuring Generic LDAP Authentication Sources

To configure Generic LDAP authentication sources:

 Navigate to the Configuration > Authentication > Sources page. The Authentication Sources > General page opens.

General Page

The **General** page labels the authentication source and defines session details.

2. Click Add.

Figure 149 Adding a Generic LDAP Authentication Database

Configuration » Authentication » Sources » Add

Authentication Sources

General Primary	Attributes Summary
Name:	LDAP1
Description:	
Туре:	Generic LDAP
Use for Authorization:	$\overline{\mathbb{V}}$ Enable to use this Authentication Source to also fetch role mapping attributes
Authorization Sources:	- Select T
Server Timeout:	10 seconds
Cache Timeout:	36000 seconds
Backup Servers Priority:	Add Backup Remove

3. Enter the values for these parameters as described in <u>Table 33</u>.

Table 33	General	Page	Parameters	for	Generic I DAP D	atabase
Tuble 33	. achciai	1 USC	i urumeters	101		atabase

Parameter	Action/Description			
Name	1. Enter the name of the LDAP authentication source.			
Description	2. Provide the additional information that helps to identify the LDAP authentication source.			
Туре	3. Select Generic LDAP.			
Use for Authorization	When Use for Authorization is enabled, W-ClearPass can use this authentication source to fetch role-mapping attributes. This option is enabled by default.			
Backup Servers Priority	4. To add a backup server in the event the main server goes down, click Add Backup . NOTE: Dell recommends setting up one or more backup servers.			
Authorization Sources	 Specifies additional sources from which role-mapping attributes may be fetched. Select a previously configured authentication source from the drop-down list. To add authentication source to the list of authorization sources, click Add. To remove the authentication source from the list, click Remove. If Policy Manager authenticates the user or device from this authentication source, it also fetches role mapping attributes from these additional authorization sources. 			
Cache Timeout	Policy Manager caches attributes fetched for an authenticating entity. This parameter controls the duration in number of seconds for which the attributes are cached. The default is 36000 seconds (one hour).			
Backup Servers Priority	 7. To add a backup server, click Add Backup. If the Backup 1 tab appears, you can specify connection details for a backup server. To remove a backup server, select the server name and click Remove. To change the server priority of the backup servers, select Move Up or Move Down. This is the order in which Policy Manager attempts to connect to the backup servers when the primary server is unreachable. 			
	8. When satisfied with these settings, click Next . The Authentication Sources Primary page opens.			
Primary Page

Figure 150 Primary Page: Generic LDAP Authentication Database

Configuration » Authentication » Sources » Add

Authentication Sources

For successful authentications, make sure you have the CA cert of the AD/LDAP added to Certificate Trust List

General Primary	Attributes Summary
Connection Details	
Hostname:	LDAP1
Connection Security:	LDAP over SSL
Port:	636
Verify Server Certificate:	Enable to verify Server Certificate for secure connection
Bind DN:	
Bind Password:	
Base DN:	Search Base Dn
Search Scope:	SubTree Search
LDAP Referrals:	Follow referrals
Bind User:	Allow bind using user password
Password Attribute:	userPassword
Password Type:	Cleartext
Password Header:	
User Certificate :	userCertificate

Table 34: Primary Parameters for an LDAP Authentication Source

Parameter	Action/Description					
Hostname	 Enter the name or IP address of the LDAP server you're going to use for authentication. Note that most domain controllers are also LDAP servers. W-ClearPass uses LDAP to talk to the domain controller. 					
	2. Set Connection Security to: LDAP over SSL.					
Connection Security	This enables the secure sockets layer (SSL) cryptographic protocol to connect to your Active Directory. Selecting LDAP over SSL automatically populates the <i>Port</i> field to 636 .					
	NOTE: In a production environment, security is a concern because when W-ClearPass binds to an LDAP server, it submits the username and password for that account over the network under clear text unless you protect it using Connection Security and set the port to 636 .					
	NOTE: To ensure successful authentication, be sure to add the CA certificate of the LDAP server to the Certificate Trust List. For more information, refer to Importing the Root CA Files to the Certificate Trust List.					
	3. Specify the TCP port at which the LDAP server is listening for connections.					
	For a single domain LDAP Domain Service:					
Port	Default port for LDAP: 389					
	 Default port for LDAP over SSL: 636 					
	When you set the <i>Connection Security</i> field to AD over SSL , this port is automatically set to 636 .					

Parameter	Action/Description				
	For a multi-domain LDAP Domain Service forest, the default ports for the global catalog are:				
	Default port without SSL: 3268				
	• Default port with SSL: 3269				
Verify Server Certificate	4. Enable this option to verify the Server Certificate for a secure connection.				
	5. Enter the Distinguished Name of the node in your directory tree from which to start searching for records.				
	The Bind DN text box specifies the full distinguished name (DN), including common name (CN), of an LDAP user account that has privileges to search for users (usually the Administrator account). For example:				
	CN=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=mycompany,DC=com				
	NOTE: You may need to get the Bind DN from the LDAP administrator.				
	This user account must have at least domain user privileges.				
Bind DN	The Bind DN user, such as Administrator, is the username associated with the Bind DN user account.				
	 For a single domain LDAP Domain Service, the Bind DN entry must be located in the same branch and below the Base DN. 				
	 For a multi-domain LDAP Domain Service forest, because you leave the Base DN text box empty, the restrictions that apply for a single domain do not apply for a multi-domain forest. 				
	W-ClearPass fills in the domain portion of the Bind DN.				
	6. Specify the username.				
	W-ClearPass also populates the <i>Base DN</i> , and the <i>NetBIOS Domain Name</i> fields.				
	For related information, see <u>LDAP Authentication Source Configuration</u> .				
	This is the text box for the Active Directory password for the account that can search for users.				
Bind Password	7. Enter the Bind password.				
	NOTE: The Bind password is the same password used in association with the Bind DN user account.				
	 For a single domain Active Directory Domain Service, this is the text box for the Distinguished Name (DN) of the starting point for directory server searches. For example: DC=mycompany,DC=com 				
שמש שמש שמש	The LDAP server starts from this DN to create master lists from which you can later filter out individual users and groups.				
	NOTE: The Base DN value that is automatically populated in this instance is <i>not</i> the best practice Base DN value.				

Parameter	Action/Description				
	Dell recommends that you narrow down the Base DN as far as possible to reduce the load on the Active Directory LDAP server. For example, if all your users are in the AD Users and Computer Users folder, then set the Base DN to search in the Users folder.				
	8. To browse the LDAP directory hierarchy, click Search Base DN . The LDAP Browser opens.				
	9. Navigate to the DN you want to use as the Base DN.				
	 For a multi-domain Active Directory Domain Service (AD DS) forest, the appropriate action is to leave the Base DN text box blank. 				
	NOTE: This is also one way to test the connectivity to your LDAP directory. If the values entered for the primary server attributes are correct, you should be able to browse the directory hierarchy by clicking Search Base DN .				
	Search scope is related to the Base DN. The search scope defines how LDAP will search for your objects.				
Coorse Coorse	11. Select the Search Scope .				
Search Scope	• Subtree Search: Searches every object and sub-object in the LDAP directory.				
	One-Level Search: Looks directly under the Base DN.				
	 Base Object: Searches any object under the Base DN. 				
	Dell does not recommend enabling the "Follow Referrals" check box.				
LDAP Referrals	This function directs the LDAP server to find a specific user in its tree, but it's possible for the user to be included on another LDAP server, which can cause a search loop.				
	12. Enable this option to allow a bind operation using the user password.				
Bind User	For clients to be authenticated by using the LDAP bind method, Policy Manager must receive the password in clear text.				
Password Attribute	13. Enter the name of the attribute in the user record from which the user password can be retrieved.				
Password Type	14. Specify the password type: Cleartext, NT Hash, LM Hash, SHA1, SHA256, MD5.				
	Oracle's LDAP implementation prepends a header to a hashed password string.				
Password Header	15. If you are using Oracle LDAP, enter the header in this field so the hashed password can be correctly identified and read.				
User Certificate	16. Leave the value that is automatically populated in this field as the default unless your LDAP administrator has a different attribute for storing the user certificate.				
	17. When satisfied with these settings, click Next . The Summary page is displayed, which shows all the settings you have entered for the LDAP authentication source.				

SQL Authentication Source Configuration

This section includes the following information:

- <u>Configuring a Generic SQL Authentication Source</u>
- Defining a Filter Query

Configuring a Generic SQL Authentication Source

Policy Manager can perform MSCHAPv2 and PAP/GTC authentication against any Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) compliant SQL database such as Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, MySQL, or PostgrSQL.

- You can specify a stored procedure to query the relevant tables and retrieve role-mapping attributes by using filters.
- You can configure the primary and backup servers, session details, filter query, and role mapping attributes to fetch the generic SQL authentication sources.

To configure a generic SQL authentication source:

1. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Authentication** > **Sources**.

The Authentication Sources page opens.

2. Click Add.

The Authentication Sources > General page opens.

General Page

The **General** page labels the authentication source and defines session details.

```
Figure 151 General Page: Generic SQL Authentication Database
```

General Primary	Attributes	Summary			
Name:					
Description:					
Type:	Generic SQ	L DB		•	
Use for Authorization:	Enable to	o use this Auth	nentication Sourc	e to	also fetch role mapping attribute
Authorization Sources:	Select			* -	Remove View Details
Cache Timeout:	36000 sec	onds			
Backup Servers Priority:			Add Backup	•	Move Up Move Down Remove

3. Enter the information for each of the required parameters as described in Table 35.

Table 35: General Page Parameters for Generic SQL Database

Parameter	Action/Description				
Name	1. Enter the name of the SQL authentication source.				
Description	2. Provide the additional information that helps to identify the authentication source.				
Туре	3. Select Generic SQL DB.				
Use for Authorization	 Leave the Use for Authorization setting enabled. When Use for Authorization is enabled, W-ClearPass can use this authentication source to fetch role-mapping attributes. This option is enabled by default. 				
Backup Servers Priority	5. To add a backup server in the event the main server goes down, click Add Backup . NOTE: Dell recommends setting up one or more backup servers.				
Authorization Sources	 6. Specifiy additional sources from which role-mapping attributes can be fetched. Select a previously configured authentication source from the drop-down list. To add authentication source to the list of authorization sources, click Add. To remove the authentication source from the list, click Remove. If Policy Manager authenticates the user or device from this authentication source, it also fetches role mapping attributes from these additional authorization sources. 				
Cache Timeout	7. Specify the number of seconds for the Cache Timeout . Policy Manager caches attributes fetched for an authenticating entity. This parameter controls the duration in number of seconds for which the attributes are cached.				
Backup Servers Priority	 8. To add a backup server, click Add Backup. If the Backup 1 tab appears, you can specify connection details for a backup server. To remove a backup server, select the server name and click Remove. To change the server priority of the backup servers, select Move Up or Move Down. This is the order in which Policy Manager attempts to connect to the backup servers when the primary server is unreachable. 				
	 When satisfied with these settings, click Next. The Authentication Sources Primary page opens. 				

Primary Page

onfiguration » Authent	tication » Sources » Add
uthentication 3	Sources
General Primary	y Attributes Summary
Connection Details	
Server Name:	
Port (Optional):	(Specify only if you want to override the default value)
Database Name:	
Login Username:	
Login Password:	
Timeout:	10 seconds
ODBC Driver:	PostgreSQL 🔻
Password Type:	Cleartext
	institut Courses
	Next > S

Figure 152 Primary Page: Generic SQL Authentication Source

10. Enter the information for each of the required parameters as described in Table 36.

Table 36: Primary Page Parameters for G	Generic SQL Database
-----------------------------------------	----------------------

Parameter	Action/Description
Server Name	Enter the name or IP address of the Generic SQL server you're going to use for authentication.
Port	Optionally, you can specify a port value to override the default port.
Database Name	Enter the name of the database from which records can be retrieved.
Login Username	Enter the name of the user used to log into the database. This account must have read access to all the attributes that need to be retrieved by the specified filters.
Password	Enter the password for the user account entered in the <i>Login Username</i> field.
Timeout	Enter the duration in seconds that Policy Manager waits before attempting to fail over from the primary to the backup servers (in the order in which they are configured).
ODBC Driver	Select the ODBC driver (Postgres, Oracle11g, or MSSQL) to connect to the database. NOTE: MySQL is supported in versions 6.0 and later. Dell does not ship MySQL drivers by default. If you require MySQL, contact dell.com/support to get the required patch. This patch does not persist across upgrades. If you are using MySQL, you should contact support before upgrading.
Password Type	Specify how the user password is stored in the database:

Parameter	Action/Description					
	 Cleartext : Password is stored as clear, unencrypted text. NT Hash: Password is stored with an NT hash using MD4. LM Hash : Password is stored with a LAN Manager Hash using DES. SHA: Password is stored with a Secure Hash Algorighm (SHA) hash. SHA256: Password is stored with an SHA-256 hash function. 					

11. When satisfied with the **Primary** page settings, click **Next**.

The Attributes page appears.

Attributes Page

The **Attributes** page defines the SQL database query filters and the attributes to be fetched when using those filters.



General	Primary	Attributes	Summary			
Specify filter	rs used to qu	ery for authent	ication and au	thorization attributes		
Filter Na	ame	Attribute Na	ame	Alias Name	Enabled As	Ť
1. Authent	ication	department		department	Attribute	P 🖬
						Add More Filters
< Back to	Authenticat	tion Sources			Next >	Save Cancel

12. Enter the information for each of the required parameters as described in Table 37.

Table 37: Attributes Page Parameters	s for Generic SQL Date	abase
--------------------------------------	------------------------	-------

Parameter	Action/Description
Filter Name	Enter the name of the filter.
Attribute Name	Specify the name of the SQL database attributes defined for this filter.
Alias Name	Specify an alias name for each attribute name selected for the filter.
Enabled As	Optionally, indicate whether the filter is enabled as a role or an attribute type. This option can also be blank.
Add More Filters	Click this button to open the Configure Filter page (for details, see the next section, <u>Defining a Filter Query</u>).

13. When satisfied with the **Attribute** page settings, click **Next**.

The Summary page appears.

Defining a Filter Query

The Configure Filter page allows you to define a filter query and the related attributes to be fetched from the SQL DB store.

To define a filter query:

1. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Authentication** > **Sources**.

The **Authentication Source**s page opens.

- a. If you're defining a new filter for an existing authentication source, click the name of the authentication source, then select the **Attributes** tab.
- b. If you're defining a new filter query for a newly configured authentication source, follow the steps described in the previous section.
- 2. From the Attributes page, click Add More Filters.

The **Configure Filter** page opens.

-ilter Name:	Authentication			
ilter Query:	SELECT user_credential CASE WHEN enabl WHEN ((sta (expire_time <= now())	(password) AS User_Pa: .ed = FALSE THEN 225 rrt_time > now()) OR ()) THEN 226	ssword, (expire_time is not null) AND	
Name	Alias Name	Data type	Enabled As	ī
1. sponsor_name	Owner	String	-	Ť
2 Click to add				

Figure 154 Configure Filter Page: Generic SQL Authentication Source

3. Enter the information for each of the required parameters as described in Table 38.

Table 38: Configure Filter Page Parameters for Generic SQL Database

Parameter	Action/Description
Filter Name	Enter the name of the new filter.
Filter Query	Specify an SQL query to fetch the attributes from the user or device record in the database.
Name	Specify the name of the attribute.
Alias Name	Specify the alias name for the attribute. By default, this is the same value as the attribute name.

Parameter	Action/Description
Data Type	Specify the data type for this attribute, such as String, Integer, or Boolean.
Enabled As	Specify whether this value is to be used directly as a role or an attribute in an Enforcement Policy. This option bypasses having to assign a role in Policy Manager through a Role Mapping Policy.

4. When satisfied with the **Configure Filter** page settings, click **Save**.

This chapter includes the following information:

• A Tour of the EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPv2 Ladder

A Tour of the EAP-PEAP-MSCHAPv2 Ladder

This section contains the following information:

- About EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2
- EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2 Handshake Exchange Summary

About EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2

The authenticated wireless access design based on Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol version 2 (PEAP-MS-CHAPv2) utilizes the user account credentials (user name and password) stored in Active Directory Domain Services to authenticate wireless access clients, instead of using smart cards or user and computer certificates for client authentication.

EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2 Handshake Exchange Summary

<u>Table 39</u> describes how a typical 802.1X authentication session flows when using W-ClearPass as the authentication server with Microsoft Active Directory as the back-end user identity repository.

- The term **supplicant** refers to a client device, such as a laptop, tablet, or mobile phone requesting access to a network.
- The term **authenticator** refers to a network device, such as an Dell Mobility Controller or an Instant Access Point (AP), which controls access to a network resource.
- The term **authentication server** refers to the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server, which processes the authentication requests and provides either an accept or reject response.

Each section of <u>Table 39</u> is followed by a diagram that illustrates the communication steps between the devices described in the table. The numbers of each step in the table correspond to the numbers assigned to the handshake sequences in the accompanying illustrations.

Table 39: Detailed Sequence of the EAP-PEAP-Active Directory Handshake Exchange

Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPOL) Start		
1	The authenticator sends an EAP-Request for the identity of the connecting supplicant (client device).	
2	The supplicant responds to the authenticator with an EAP Identity Response that contains the identity (username) used for authentication. This is referred to as the "Outer Identity."	
3	The authenticator forwards the EAP Identity Response with the identity of the user to the authentication server (W-ClearPass Policy Manager).	



Active Directory			
4	The authentication server performs an LDAP lookup against its configured Active Directory authentication sources to try to find the user's name in the directory, along with some basic LDAP attributes, such as <i>sAMAccountName</i> .		
5	The LDAP server responds to the authentication server's LDAP search request with the appropriate answers to the LDAP lookup.		



EAPC)L
6	The authentication server responds to the supplicant through the authenticator with an EAP-Request message indicating that it would like to initiate EAP-PEAP.
7	The authenticator passes the EAP-Request message to the supplicant.



Transport Layer Security (TLS) Tunnel Setup			
8	The supplicant sends a Transport Layer Security (TLS) "Client Hello" message within an EAP-response message through the authenticator to the authentication server.		
9	The authenticator passes the EAP-Response message containing the TLS Client Hello message to the authentication server.		
10	The authentication server responds with a TLS Handshake message of types "Server Hello," "Certificate," "Server Key Exchange," and "Server Hello Done" to the authenticator.		
11	The authenticator forwards the TLS handshake messages between the authentication server and the supplicant inside of EAP Request (server) and EAP Response (supplicant) messages.		

Transport Layer Security (TLS) Tunnel Setup		
12	Steps 10 and 11 repeat until the authentication server has transmitted all of its handshake messages. This may take several steps due to having to dismantle the certificates into fragments that fit within the size limits of an EAP message.	
13	The supplicant sends another TLS Handshake message inside an EAP-Response message of types "Client Key Exchange," "Change Cipher Spec," "Handshake," and "Client Finished" to the authenticator.	
14	The authenticator sends this EAP-Response to the authentication server.	
14	The authentication server responds to the authenticator with an EAP-Request for the supplicant that contains the message types "Change Cipher Spec" and "Server Finished."	
16	The authenticator passes the EAP message to the supplicant.	
17	The supplicant sends an EAP-Response for the authentication server to the authenticator.	
18	The authenticator sends the EAP-Response to the authentication server.	



Inner I	AP MSCHAPv2
19	Inside the TLS tunnel, the EAP process starts again with the authentication server sending an EAP Identity Request to the supplicant requesting the client's identity.

Inner EAP MSCHAPv2		
20	The authenticator sends the EAP Identity Request message to the supplicant requesting the client's identity.	
21	The supplicant responds with an EAP Identity Response containing its identity to the authenticator.	
22	The authenticator forwards this EAP Identity Response to the authentication server.	



Active I	Directory
23	The authentication server performs an LDAP lookup against its configured Active Directory authentication sources to try to find the user's name in the directory, along with some basic LDAP attributes, such as <i>sAMAccountName</i> .
24	The LDAP server responds to the LDAP search request with the appropriate answers to the query.





Inner EAP MSCHAPv2			
25	The authentication server sends an EAP request to the supplicant containing an MS-CHAPv2 challenge.		
26	The authenticator forwards the EAP request to the supplicant.		
27	The supplicant responds with an EAP Identity Response containing its identity to the authenticator.		
28	The authenticator forwards this EAP Identity Response to the authentication server.		



Active Directory				
29	The authentication server takes the username and the MSCHAPv2 response from the supplicant and combines it with the MSCHAPv2 challenge and the NetBIOS name of the Active Directory domain and submits this set of information to the Active Directory domain controller for authentication. This is done via NT LAN Manager (NTLM).			
30	The Active Directory domain controller lets the authentication server know that the authentication was successful.			









Inner EAP MSCHAPv2			
31	The authentication server sends an EAP-Request message for the supplicant with an MSCHAPv2 success message and an authenticator response string from the Active Directory Domain Controller to the authenticator.		
32	The authenticator passes the EAP-Request with an MSCHAPv2 success message and the authenticator response to the supplicant.		
33	The supplicant sends an EAP-Response message for the authentication server with an MSCHAPv2 success message to the authenticator.		
34	The authenticator sends the EAP-Response message from the supplicant with the MSCHAPv2 success message to the authentication server.		
35	The authentication server sends an EAP-Request message to the authenticator indicating that the Inner EAP method was successful.		
36	The authenticator forwards this EAP-Request to the supplicant.		
37	The supplicant sends an EAP-Response to the authentication server, acknowledging that the Inner EAP method was successful.		
38	The authenticator forwards the EAP-Response from the the supplicant to the authentication server.		



EAPOL	
39	The authentication server sends a RADIUS access-accept message to the authenticator with an EAPOL success message along with the key material.
40	The authenticator sends an EAPOL success message to the supplicant.
41	The authenticator and supplicant complete a four-way handshake to start the flow of encrypted wireless traffic.



This chapter includes the following information

- W-ClearPass Configuration API Overview
- W-ClearPass Configuration API Methods
- W-ClearPass Configuration API Examples
- API Error Handling
- About the API Explorer

W-ClearPass Configuration API Overview

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- Admin Accounts for API Access
- XML Data Structure
- Filter Elements
- Advanced Match Operations
- Setting Up Bulk Access for Endpoints and Guest Accounts

Introduction

The W-ClearPass Configuration Application Programming Interface (API) is used to read and write a number of configuration elements (known as *Entities*), either programmatically or by using a script.

The W-ClearPass Configuration API allows you to configure or modify the entities in W-ClearPass without logging into the Admin user interface. For example, when you create a new user in the database, you may want to create a guest user automatically. You can use the W-ClearPass Configuration API to automate this task.

The API is made available through an HTTP POST-based mechanism. The API request is in the form of an XML snippet that is posted to a URL hosted by an administration server on the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server.

The API response received is also in the form of an XML snippet. Both the XML request and the XML response are structurally defined in an XSD-format file.

Read, **Write**, and **Delete** operations are supported in the W-ClearPass Configuration API. These operations are referred to as "methods." You can use these methods to perform the following name-list based operations:

- NameList. Returns the list of names for all objects created for an Entity type.
- Reorder. Receives a list of names of Entity type objects and applies the new order to the list of objects.
- **Status Change**. Retrieves the name-list of disabled and enabled entities of a specific type and changes the status of the entities appropriately.

Every XML request must conform to the W-ClearPass Configuration API XML schema.

Admin Accounts for API Access

Only the configured Admin users can use API access. Rather than using the default **admin** user account, it is recommended that you create a separate user for API access.

To create a new user for API access, update the password of the default **apiadmin** user account or create a new Admin user with only API access privileges.

This ensures that all API actions are tracked through the Audit Viewer page for this user account.

Additionally, restrictions to specific entities can be enforced by defining a custom admin privilege level and creating API admin users with that privilege level. This ensures that the API account included in client scripts secure the confidential information in the system.

XML Data Structure

The following elements define the structure of XML data:

- Root: The root element is <TipsApiRequest> for a request and <TipsApiResponse> for a response.
- Sub-element: <TipsHeader> describes the version (for example 3.0). The sub-element is the container object that can be controlled by adding and modifying attributes. The sub-element in the XML request contains only the version number; the sub-element in the XML response contains the version number, time of execution (exportTime), and entity types.
- **Body**: Describes the child elements of XML data that are known the **body**. The body contains the **Filter** elements in the XML request and a list of **Entity** objects in the XML response.

Figure 155 describes the structure of XML data in an XML request:

Figure 155 Structure of an XML Request



Figure 156 describes the structure of XML data in an XML response:

Figure 156 Structure of an XML Response



Filter Elements

Use the **Filter** element to fetch a list of objects of a specific entity. You can use a filter to perform **Read** and **Delete** operations.

A filter contains a Criteria element that includes the following:

- **fieldname**: Specifies the name of the field present in XML that needs to be filtered.
- **filterString**: Specifies the string that is used to match the filter during a match of the filter.
- match: Specifies the operator to be used.

For example, the match operator equals/matches the value of the **fieldname** field in the Entity object using **filterString**.

Filter Example

The following is an example of an XML request that contains a filter on a Guest user with a criteria to fetch Guest users that match the name **McIntosh**.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0" source="Guest"/>
<Filter entity="GuestUser">
<Criteria fieldName="name" filterString="McIntosh" match="equals"/>
</Filter>
</TipsApiRequest>
```

Advanced Match Operations

When you specify multiple filters, the result can be a combination of the list of elements of all of the filter criteria. For **Match All** criteria, specify the nested criteria as **MoreFilterConditions**. For match any criteria, multiple filters with criteria can be specified for the Entity type. If a criteria is not specified, then the **Advanced Match** operation fetches all objects of the Entity type.



Because the number of entities and the associated tag attributes with each entity can impact performance, the complex query supported in the Advanced Match Operations should be used with care.

You can use the API to query based on tag attributes when the queries are not repeated.

With the XML request and response examples given in this section, you can use the **Advanced Match** operation to fetch all objects of an Entity type.

XML Request

The following example describes the XML request that fetches all network devices with the IP address 192.0.2.10 and vendor IETF:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0"/>
<Filter entity="NadClient">
<Criteria fieldName="ipAddress" filterString="192.0.2.10" match="contains">
<MoreFilterConditions fieldName="name" fieldValue="IETF" match="equals"/>
</Criteria>
<//Criteria>
<//Filter>
<//TipsApiRequest>
```

Filtering Based on Tag Attributes

The following entity types support tag attributes:

- Endpoint
- Device
- GuestUser
- LocalUser

To filter based on the tag attributes, include an additional attribute called **dataType="ATTRIBUTE"** for that filter condition as described in the following example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0"/>
<Filter entity="NadClient">
<Criteria fieldName="ipAddress" filterString="192.0.2.10" match="contains">
<MoreFilterConditions fieldName="TagName" fieldValue="TagValue" match="equals"
dataType="ATTRIBUTE"/>
</Criteria>
</Filter>
</TipsApiRequest>
```

Match Operators Supported in a Criteria

The following match operators are supported in a criteria:

- **equals**: The value of fieldname matches the filterString exactly.
- notequals: The value of fieldname does not exactly match the filterString
- contains: The value of fieldname partially matches with the filterString, whic is case sensitive
- icontains: The case insensitive version of contains.
- **belongsto**: The value of fieldname is one of the values specified in the filterString, which can be comma separated in this case.

Setting Up Bulk Access for Endpoints and Guest Accounts

Depending on the deployment, entities such as Endpoints and Guest users can grow to many thousands. These entities support tag attributes, which are custom key-value pairs added by the system or the Administrator that provide more context to the entity.



A bulk query to fetch all the details of the endpoints or Guest users in the system can impact system performance. For better query performance and minimal load on the system, we recommends that you use the bulk query cautiously.

Alternatively, you can primarily use the NameList query followed by a query on individual details for each name present in the NameList. The NameList response depends on the specific endpoint.

Fetching List of MAC Addresses

Use the following command to fetch the list of MAC addresses for the endpoints present in the system:

wget --no-check-certificate --http-user=<USER> --http-password=<PASSWORD> --post-file=in.xml
https://CPPM-Server/tipsapi/config/namelist/Endpoint

NameList Method XML Request

The following is an example of the XML request for the Namelist method:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0"/>
<EntityNameList entity="Endpoint"/>
</TipsApiRequest>
```

NameList Method XML Response

The following is an example of the Namelist method XML response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader exportTime="Mon Aug 22 13:37:13 PST 2016" version="6.x"/>
<StatusCode>Success</StatusCode>
<EntityNameList entity="Endpoint">
<Name>000c29eff62f</Name>
<Name>001122aabbcc</Name>
</EntityNameList>
</TipsApiResponse>
```

Fetching List of Endpoints for MAC Address

Use the following command to fetch the list of endpoints for a specific MAC address:

```
wget --no-check-certificate --http-user=<USER> --http-password=<PASSWORD> https://CPPM-
Server/tipsapi/config/read/Endpoint/equals?macAddress=000c29eff62f
```

NameList Method XML Response

The following is an example of the Namelist method XML response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader exportTime="Mon Aug 22 14:50:09 PST 2016" version="6.x"/>
<StatusCode>Success</StatusCode>
<EntityMaxRecordCount>1</EntityMaxRecordCount>
<Endpoints>
<Endpoint macAddress="000c29eff62f" status="Known"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="true" tagName="Encryption Enabled"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="PDA 2" tagName="Phone Number"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="MobileIron" tagName="Source"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="3fbe0a80-e7d2-4048-bd2e-62aec232a236" tagName="MDM Identifier"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="Bala" tagName="Display Name"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="iPad 2" tagName="Model"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="true" tagName="MDM Enabled"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="balu" tagName="Owner"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="Installed" tagName="Required App"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="b786da8ca3969e0134f058ca5efe94687ab7f31f" tagName="UDID"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="iOS 9.3" tagName="OS Version"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="PDA" tagName="Carrier"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="false" tagName="Compromised"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="Corporate" tagName="Ownership"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="false" tagName="Blacklisted App"/>
<EndpointTags tagValue="Apple" tagName="Manufacturer"/>
```

</Endpoint>

</Endpoints>

</TipsApiResponse>

W-ClearPass Configuration API Methods

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- Authentication Credentials
- Entity Names Supported
- <u>NameList</u>
- Reorder
- Status Change

Introduction

The model for the W-ClearPass Configuration API is a Representational State Transfer (REST) API, where each method is represented by a URL.

For each operation, an XML request is posted to a different URL identified by the following methods:

• **Read**: The Read method gets one or more filter elements and returns a unified list of Entity objects. The URL for the Read method is:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/read/<Entity>

- Write: The Write method retrieves a list of Entity objects to save. The operation either adds a new object or updates an existing one. The URL for the Write method is: https://<server>/tipsapi/config/write/<Entity>
- **Delete**: The Delete method executes the following tasks:
 - Initially, the deleteConfirm method returns a list of identifiers for each object that needs to be deleted. The URL for the deleteConfirm method is:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/deleteConfirm/<Entity>

 Creates a second request that contains the list of identifiers to delete. The URL for the Delete method is:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/delete/<Entity>

Authentication Credentials

API methods require authorization, which is performed using HTTP basic authentication. The username and password are not passed in the XML request; however, they are part of the HTTP call.

If the authentication is unsuccessful, the 401 Unauthorized HTTP error message appears.

You must use the W-ClearPass Policy Manager administrator credentials for authentication. If the administrator does not have the permissions to perform the read, write, and delete operations, the 401 Unauthorized HTTP error message appears.

Entity Names Supported

Table 40 describes the **Entity Names** supported in the W-ClearPass Policy Manager Configuration API.

Table 40:	Supported	Entity Names	in the Co	nfiguration AP	7
-----------	-----------	--------------	-----------	----------------	---

Entity Name	Description
AdminPrivileges	Specifies the Admin user privileges.
AdminUser	Specifies the Admin user repository.
AuditPosture	Specifies the audit posture servers, such as Network Mapper (NMAP) and Nessus scanner.
AuthMethod	Specifies the authentication method to authenticate the user or device against an authentication source.
AuthSource	Specifies the identity store (Active Directory, LDAP Directory, SQL Database, and Token Server) against which users and devices are authenticated.
ContextServer	Specifies the Endpoint Context Server.
ContextServerAction	Specifies the Endpoint Context Server Actions dictionary to configure actions that are performed on endpoints.
DataFilter	Specifies the data filters used to filter records in Access Tracker and Syslog messages.
Endpoint	Specifies the Endpoint device details. NOTE: Profile information is not supported in the API.
EnforcementPolicy	Specifies the enforcement policy that applies conditions (roles, health, and time attributes) against specific values associated with those attributes to determine the enforcement profile.
EnforcementProfile	Specifies the enforcement profiles containing attributes that define a client's scope of access for the session.
ExtSyslog	Specifies the session data, audit records, and event records that can be sent to one or more syslog targets (servers).
GuestUser	Specifies the Guest accounts managed by the Guest module.
LocalUser	Specifies the Local User Repository.
NadClient	Specifies the network device.

Entity Name	Description
NadGroup	Specifies the network device group.
OnboardDevice	Specifies the Onboard devices managed by Onboard module.
PostureExternal	Specifies the External Posture Server.
PostureInternal	Specifies the Internal Posture Policy that tests requests against Internal Posture rules to assess device health.
ProxyTarget	Specifies the RADIUS request that needs to be proxied to another RADIUS server.
RADIUSDictionary	Specifies the RADIUS vendor attributes dictionary.
Role	Specifies a set of roles assigned by the role mapping policy.
RoleMapping	Specifies the Role-Mapping Policy.
ServerConfig	Provides the server configuration details. NOTE: Only the Read method is permitted.
Service	Specifies a service and its associated entities.
Simulation	Specifies the policy simulations that allow policies to be verified before they are deployed.
SnmpTrapConfig	Specifies SNMP trap receivers.
StaticHostList	Comprises of a list of MAC addresses and IP addresses. These can be used as white-lists or blacklists to control access to the network.
SyslogExportData	Specifies the Syslog Export Filters that notify Policy Manager where to send this information and what type of information should be sent through data filters.
TacacsServiceDictionary	Specifies the TACACS+ Service attributes dictionary.
TagDefinition	Specifies the Entity Tag Definitions.
TagDictionary	Specifies the Entity Tag Attributes dictionary.

NameList

The **NameList** method returns the list of names for all objects created for an Entity type. The XML request contains an **EntityNameList** request passed in the entity-type. You can pass multiple **EntityNameList** requests for different Entity types.

In the XML response, **EntityNameList** is populated with the entity-names. The list of names in the XML response is not displayed in a specific order.

However, for the entities that have a specific order (for example, **Services**), the names are populated in the order as specified in the **EntityNameList**.

The URL for the NameList method is:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/namelist/<Entity>

XML Request

The following is an example of the NameList method XML request:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0"/>
<EntityNameList entity="Service"/>
</TipsApiRequest>
```

XML Response

The following is an example of the NameList method XML response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0"><TipsHeader
exportTime="Wed Aug 24 15:39:01 PST 2016" version="6.x"/>
<StatusCode>Success</StatusCode>
<EntityNameList entity="Service"><Name>[Policy Manager Admin Network Login Service]
</Name><Name>[AirGroup Authorization Service]</Name><Name>[Aruba Device Access Service]
</Name><Name>[Guest Operator Logins]</Name><Name>test 802.1X Wireless</Name>
</EntityNameList>
</TipsApiResponse>
```

Reorder

The **Reorder** method receives a list of names of objects of the Entity type and applies the new order to the list of objects.

The XML request contains an **EntityOrderList** that should specify the Entity-type and a list of names. This list should contain the names of all elements of the Entity-type. The new order is returned in the XML response.

You can pass multiple **EntityOrderList** for different entity-types in the request. The Reorder method is available for the **Services** entity-type.

The URL for the **Reorder** method is:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/reorder/<Entity>

XML Request

The following is an example of the **Reorder** method XML request:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="6.x"/>
<EntityOrderList entity="Service"><Name>[Aruba Device Access Service]</Name>
<Name>[Guest Operator Logins]</Name><test 802.1X Wireless</Name>
<Name>[Policy Manager Admin Network Login Service]</Name>
```

<Name>[AirGroup Authorization Service]</Name></EntityOrderList> </TipsApiRequest>

XML Response

The following is an example of the **Reorder** method XML response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader exportTime="Wed Aug 24 15:45:24 PST 2016" version="6.x"/>
<StatusCode>Success</StatusCode>
<LogMessages><Message>Services have been reordered successfully</Message></LogMessages>
<EntityOrderList entity="Service"><Name>[Aruba Device Access Service]</Name>
<Name>[Guest Operator Logins]</Name><Name>test 802.1X Wireless</Name>
<Name>[Policy Manager Admin Network Login Service]</Name>
</Name>[AirGroup Authorization Service]</Name>
</TipsApiResponse>
```

Status Change

The **Status Change** method gets the name-list of disabled and enabled entities of a specific type and changes the status of the entities as required. The XML request contains an **EntityStatusList** that includes the entity-type and a name-list.

You must specify the Enabled elements first and then the Disabled elements within the name-list. The status list of the entity is returned in the XML response.

Multiple EntityStatusList requests for different entity types are supported.

The URL for the Status Change method is:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/status/<Entity>

XML Request

The following is an example of the **Status Change** method XML request:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="6.x"/>
<EntityStatusList entity="Service">
<Enabled>[Aruba Device Access Service]</Enabled>
<Enabled>[Guest Operator Logins]</Enabled>
<Disabled>test 802.1X Wireless</Disabled>
<Disabled>[Policy Manager Admin Network Login Service]</Disabled>
</EntityStatusList>
</TipsApiRequest>
```

XML Response

The following is an example of the Status Change method XML response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader exportTime="Wed Aug 24 16:08:13 PST 2016" version="6.x"/>
<StatusCode>Success</StatusCode>
```

<LogMessages><Message>Status successfully changed</Message></LogMessages> <EntityStatusList entity="Service"> <Enabled>[AirGroup Authorization Service]</Enabled> <Enabled>[Aruba Device Access Service]</Enabled> <Enabled>[Guest Operator Logins]</Enabled> <Disabled>[Policy Manager Admin Network Login Service]</Disabled> <Disabled>test 802.1X Wireless</Disabled> </EntityStatusList> </TipsApiResponse>

W-ClearPass Configuration API Examples

This section contains the following information:

- Introduction
- Using the Contains Match Operator
- <u>Retrieving a Guest User Value</u>
- Retrieving a Local User Value
- Adding a Guest User Value
- Updating a Guest User Value
- Removing a Guest User

Introduction

This section provides W-ClearPass Configuration API examples of XML requests and responses. With the examples provided in this section, you can retrieve, add, update, and remove the **Guest User** value and the **Local User** value.

Using the Contains Match Operator

Use the **Contains** match operator to fetch more than one item.

For example, you could group Guest users who attend a conference in Rome using the format *Rome_Conf_* <*user_name*>.

You can fetch the required group of Guest users using the criteria as described in the following example:

```
<Filter entity="GuestUser">
<Criteria fieldName="name" filterString=" Rome_Conf_" match="contains"/>
</Filter>
```

Retrieving a Guest User Value

For the **GuestUser** and **OnboardDevice** entity types, you must use the source attribute with the value **Guest**. For other entity types, you do not need to include the source attribute.

Post the XML request to the following URL:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/read/GuestUser

XML Request

The following is an example of the XML request used to fetch all Guest users:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
```

```
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0" source="Guest"/>
<Filter entity="GuestUser"/>
</TipsApiRequest>
```

Retrieving a Local User Value

For other entity types, you do not need to include the source attribute.

If the Guest description is present in the XML request, the GuestUserDetails element is displayed in the Guest details.

Post the XML request to the following URL:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/read/LocalUser

Fetching All Local Users

The following is an example of an XML request used to fetch all local users:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0"/>
<Filter entity="LocalUser"/>
</TipsApiRequest>
```

Using Criteria in a Filter

The following is an example of using Criteria in a filter:

```
<Filter entity="GuestUser">
<Criteria fieldName="name" filterString="reynolds" match="equals"/>
</Filter>
```

Retrieving a Specific Guest Name

The following is an example of the XML response that retrieves all Guest users with the name "reynolds."

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader exportTime="Wed Sep 24 10:47:26 PST 2016" version=6.x"/>
<StatusCode>Success</StatusCode>
<EntityMaxRecordCount>1</EntityMaxRecordCount>
<GuestUsers>
<GuestUser enabled="true" expiryTime="2016-12-29 12:24:37.0"
startTime="2016-09-29 12:26:08.28" sponsorName="admin" guestType="USER"
password="webco123#" name="reynolds">
<GuestUserDetails sendSms="false" sendEmail="true" description="Test"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Company Name" tagValue="WebCo"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Email Address" tagValue="reynolds@webco.net"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Location" tagValue="Room A"/>
</GuestUser>
</GuestUsers>
</TipsApiResponse>
```

Adding a Guest User Value

For the Guest description, you must include the **GuestUserDetails** element as described in the following example.

You can set the **sendSms** and **sendEmail** attribute values to **false** as these values are not used by Guest.

XML Request

Post the XML request to the following URL:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/write/<GuestUser>

The following example of the XML request is similar to the XML response received in the Read method, except **StatusCode**, **EntityMaxRecordCount**, and **exportTime** are omitted:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0" source="Guest"/>
<GuestUsers>
<GuestUser enabled="true" expiryTime="2016-12-30 12:24:37" startTime="2015-09-30 12:26:08"
sponsorName="admin" guestType="USER" password="webco123#" name="mike">
<GuestUser enabled="true" expiryTime="2016-12-30 12:24:37" startTime="2015-09-30 12:26:08"
sponsorName="admin" guestType="USER" password="webco123#" name="mike">
<GuestUserDetails sendSms="false" sendEmail="false" description="Test"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="First Name" tagValue="Michael"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Email Address" tagValue="mike@webco.net"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Phone" tagValue="4888888888"/>
</GuestUser>
</GuestUser}
</GuestUser
</GuestUser}
```

XML Response

The following is an example of the XML response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
</TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
</TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
</TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiResponse">
</TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/t
```

Updating a Guest User Value

The **Write** method handles the **Update** operation and determines whether a passed object in the XML request is already present or not.

Depending on presence of the passed object, a new object is added or the existing object is updated.

Post the XML request to the following URL:

https://<server>/tipsapi/config/write/<GuestUser>

XML Request

The following is an example of the XML request:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
```

```
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0" source="Guest"/>
<GuestUsers>
<GuestUser enabled="true" expiryTime="2016-09-18 12:24:37" startTime="2016-09-18 12:26:08"
sponsorName="admin" guestType="USER" password="webco123#" name="mike">
<GuestUser enabled="true" expiryTime="2016-09-18 12:24:37" startTime="2016-09-18 12:26:08"
sponsorName="admin" guestType="USER" password="webco123#" name="mike">
<GuestUser admin" guestType="USER" password="webco123#" name="mike">
<GuestUserTags tagName="First Name" tagValue="Michael"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Last Name" tagValue="Penn"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Email Address" tagValue="mike@webco.net"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Phone" tagValue="4888888888"/>
</GuestUser>
</GuestUsers>
</TipsApiRequest>
```

XML Response

The following is an example of the XML response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader exportTime="Fri Sep 16 10:51:27 PST 2016" version="3.0"/>
<StatusCode>Success</StatusCode>
<LogMessages>
<Message>Updated 1 guest user(s)</Message>
</LogMessages>
</TipsApiResponse>
```

Updated XML Response

The following is an example of the XML response with some objects added and updated:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="tipsApiResponse xmlns="tipsApiResponse">
</tipsApiResponse xmlns="tipsApiResponse xmlns="tipsApiResponse">
</tipsApiResponse xmlns="tipsApiResponse xmlns="tipsApiResponse">
</tipsApiResponse xmlns="tipsApiResponse xmlns="tipsApiResponse">
```

Removing a Guest User

The **Remove** operation requires two steps, as illustrated in this example. To remove a Guest user with the name "reynolds," follow these steps.

XML Request

1. Post the XML request to the following URL:

```
https://<server>/tipsapi/config/deleteConfirm/<GuestUser>
```

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader version="3.0" source="Guest"/>
<Filter entity="GuestUser">
<Criteria fieldName="name" filterString="reynolds" match="equals"/>
```

```
</Filter>
</TipsApiRequest>
```

XML Response

The following is an example of the XML response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader exportTime="Fri Sep 16 10:47:26 PST 2016" version="3.0"/>
<StatusCode>Success</StatusCode>
<EntityMaxRecordCount>1</EntityMaxRecordCount>
<GuestUsers>
<GuestUser enabled="true" expiryTime="2016-12-18 12:24:37.0"
startTime="2015-09-18 12:26:08.28" sponsorName="admin" questType="USER"
password="webco123#" name="reynolds">
<element-id>GuestUser reynolds MCw</element-id>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Company Name" tagValue="Webco"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Email Address" tagValue="reynolds@webco.net"/>
<GuestUserTags tagName="Location" tagValue="Room A"/>
</GuestUser>
</GuestUsers>
</TipsApiResponse>
```

XML Request

2. Extract the element-IDs and post the XML request to the following URL:

```
https://<server>/tipsapi/config/delete/<GuestUser>
```

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
</TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
</TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
</TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
</TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
</TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
</TipsApiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiRequest xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiRequest xmlns="http://www.aven
```

XML Response

The following is an example of the XML response:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsHeader exportTime="Fri Sep 16 10:56:00 PST 2016" version="3.0"/>
<StatusCode>Success</StatusCode>
<LogMessages>
</LogMessages>
</LogMessages>
</TipsApiResponse>
```

API Error Handling

This section contains the following information:

- When There Is an Error During a Request
- InvalidFetchCriteria Example

When There Is an Error During a Request

When there is an error or failure during a request, the **StatusCode** is set to **Failure**. A **TipsApiError** element is set with an Error Code and a list of messages.



You must use the source attribute with the value **Guest** for the **GuestUser** and **OnboardDevice** entity types. For other entity types, you do not need to include the source attribute.

The following error codes are defined in the Admin API:

- **BadRequest**: Occurs when the method described in the following URL is not supported or is invalid: *https://<server>/tipsapi/config/<method>/<Entity>*
- **DependencyBreak**: Occurs when the Entity object is an element of some other Entity and is requested for deletion.
- **IllegalArgument**: Occurs when the Entity type is invalid or does not exist.
- **InvalidFetchCriteria**: Occurs when a specified field name does not exist for an entity type or the specified filter operation is invalid.
- InvalidXml: Occurs when XML has an invalid structure and contains some additional or missing elements.
- ServiceFailure: Occurs when an internal error is generated in API services.

InvalidFetchCriteria Example

The following is an example of the error message that is generated when a specified field name does not exist for an entity type or the specified filter operation is invalid:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="http://www.avendasys.com/tipsapiDefs/1.0">
<TipsApiResponse xmlns="Wed May 25 15:31:41 PST 2016" version="6.6"/>
<StatusCode>Failure</StatusCode>
<TipsApiError>
<ErrorCode>InvalidFetchCriteria</ErrorCode>
<Message>Invalid FieldName. 'macaddress' is not a field of Endpoint entity</Message>
</TipsApiError>
</TipsApiError>
```

About the API Explorer

In addition to the W-ClearPass Configuration API, Dell offers a number of other APIs that are available through the API Explorer:

ΑΡΙ	Services Provided
ApiFramework	ApiClients
GuestManager	Configuration, Device, Guest
Onboard	Certificate, CertificateChain, CertificateExport, CertificateImport, CertificateNew, CertificateReject, CertificateRequest, CertificateRevoke, CertificateSign
OperatorLogins	GetAccount, GetPrivileges
Platform	ClusterDbSync
SmsServices	SmsSend

To access the API Explorer:

- 1. Log into the W-ClearPass Policy Manager server and select **ClearPass Guest** from **Applications** or **Quick Links**.
- In W-ClearPass Guest, navigate to Administration > API Services > API Clients. The API Clients page opens.

Figure 157 API Clients Page

ClearP	<u>Support</u> <u>Help</u> demoadmin (IT Admini:	<u>Logout</u> strators)			
Home » Administration » API Services » API Clients					
API Clients Create API					
The API clients you have defined are listed below.					
Filter:					
△ Client ID	Grant Types	Access Token	Operator Profile		
🚵 client_credentials	client_credentials	8 hours	IT Administrators]	
🏡 Guest API Testing	password refresh_token	8 hours	IT Administrators		
🟡 username_password	password refresh_token	8 hours	IT Administrators		

3. Click the **API Explorer** link.

The API Explorer dialog opens.

API Explorer

API	Services	Versions
ApiFramework	ApiClients	v1
GuestManager	Configuration, Device, Guest	v1
Onboard	Certificate, CertificateChain, CertificateExport, CertificateImport, CertificateNew, CertificateReject, CertificateRevoke, CertificateSign	v1
OperatorLogins	GetAccount, GetPrivileges	v1
Platform	ClusterDbSync	v1
SmsServices	SmsSend	v1

4. Select the API of choice.

The API page for the selected API opens. The example in Figure 159 is the OperatorLogins API.

Figure 159 OperatorLogins API Selected

API Explorer – OperatorLogins-v1	
Back to API Explorer	
Authorization: Enter Authorization header value here	
GetAccount : Returns user account information	Show/Hide List Operations Expand Operations
GET /oauth/me	Returns user account information
POST /oauth/me	Returns user account information
GetPrivileges : Determine the privileges available to the user	Show/Hide List Operations Expand Operations

- 5. In the Authorization field, enter the Authorization header value.
- 6. Proceed to work in the API as needed.
- 7. To return to the API Explorer, click **Back to API Explorer**.